



## **J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Router**

# **Getting Started Guide**

*Release 8.5*

**Juniper Networks, Inc.**

1194 North Mathilda Avenue  
Sunnyvale, California 94089  
USA

408-745-2000

**[www.juniper.net](http://www.juniper.net)**

Part Number: 530-021975-01, Revision 1

This product includes the Envoy SNMP Engine, developed by Epilogue Technology, an Integrated Systems Company. Copyright © 1986-1997, Epilogue Technology Corporation. All rights reserved. This program and its documentation were developed at private expense, and no part of them is in the public domain.

This product includes memory allocation software developed by Mark Moraes, copyright © 1988, 1989, 1993, University of Toronto.

This product includes FreeBSD software developed by the University of California, Berkeley, and its contributors. All of the documentation and software included in the 4.4BSD and 4.4BSD-Lite Releases is copyrighted by the Regents of the University of California. Copyright © 1979, 1980, 1983, 1986, 1988, 1989, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994. The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

GateD software copyright © 1995, the Regents of the University. All rights reserved. Gate Daemon was originated and developed through release 3.0 by Cornell University and its collaborators. Gated is based on Kirton's EGP, UC Berkeley's routing daemon (routed), and DCN's HELLO routing protocol. Development of Gated has been supported in part by the National Science Foundation. Portions of the GateD software copyright © 1988, Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. Portions of the GateD software copyright © 1991, D. L. S. Associates.

This product includes software developed by Maker Communications, Inc., copyright © 1996, 1997, Maker Communications, Inc.

Juniper Networks, the Juniper Networks logo, NetScreen, and ScreenOS are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. in the United States and other countries. JUNOS and JUNOSe are trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. All other trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Products made or sold by Juniper Networks or components thereof might be covered by one or more of the following patents that are owned by or licensed to Juniper Networks: U.S. Patent Nos. 5,473,599, 5,905,725, 5,909,440, 6,192,051, 6,333,650, 6,359,479, 6,406,312, 6,429,706, 6,459,579, 6,493,347, 6,538,518, 6,538,899, 6,552,918, 6,567,902, 6,578,186, and 6,590,785.

Copyright © 2007, Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.

*J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Router Getting Started Guide*  
Release 8.5  
Copyright © 2007, Juniper Networks, Inc.  
All rights reserved. Printed in USA.

Writing: Nidhi Bhargava, Michael Bushong, Maya Devi, Taffy Everts, Walter Goralski, Joshua Kim, Jerry Isaac, Archana Maheshwari, Hareesh Kumar Kozhippurath Narayana Panicker, Laura Phillips, Cheryl Potter, Frank Reade, Swapna Steiger, Selvakumar T. S., and Alan Twigg  
Editing: Taffy Everts and Stella Hackell  
Illustration: Faith Bradford Brown and Nathaniel Woodward  
Cover Design: Edmonds Design

Revision History  
12 October 2007—Revision 1.

The information in this document is current as of the date listed in the revision history.

#### YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. The JUNOS software has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

#### SOFTWARE LICENSE

The terms and conditions for using this software are described in the software license contained in the acknowledgment to your purchase order or, to the extent applicable, to any reseller agreement or end-user purchase agreement executed between you and Juniper Networks. By using this software, you indicate that you understand and agree to be bound by those terms and conditions. Generally speaking, the software license restricts the manner in which you are permitted to use the software and may contain prohibitions against certain uses. The software license may state conditions under which the license is automatically terminated. You should consult the license for further details. For complete product documentation, please see the Juniper Networks Web site at [www.juniper.net/techpubs](http://www.juniper.net/techpubs).

## End User License Agreement

READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT") BEFORE DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE. BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE OR OTHERWISE EXPRESSING YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, YOU (AS CUSTOMER OR IF YOU ARE NOT THE CUSTOMER, AS A REPRESENTATIVE/AGENT AUTHORIZED TO BIND THE CUSTOMER) CONSENT TO BE BOUND BY THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT OR CANNOT AGREE TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, THEN (A) DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, OR USE THE SOFTWARE, AND (B) YOU MAY CONTACT JUNIPER NETWORKS REGARDING LICENSE TERMS.

1. **The Parties.** The parties to this Agreement are Juniper Networks, Inc. and its subsidiaries (collectively "Juniper"), and the person or organization that originally purchased from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller the applicable license(s) for use of the Software ("Customer") (collectively, the "Parties").
2. **The Software.** In this Agreement, "Software" means the program modules and features of the Juniper or Juniper-supplied software, and updates and releases of such software, for which Customer has paid the applicable license or support fees to Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller. "Embedded Software" means Software which Juniper has embedded in the Juniper equipment.
3. **License Grant.** Subject to payment of the applicable fees and the limitations and restrictions set forth herein, Juniper grants to Customer a non-exclusive and non-transferable license, without right to sublicense, to use the Software, in executable form only, subject to the following use restrictions:
  - a. Customer shall use the Embedded Software solely as embedded in, and for execution on, Juniper equipment originally purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.
  - b. Customer shall use the Software on a single hardware chassis having a single processing unit, or as many chassis or processing units for which Customer has paid the applicable license fees; provided, however, with respect to the Steel-Belted Radius or Odyssey Access Client software only, Customer shall use such Software on a single computer containing a single physical random access memory space and containing any number of processors. Use of the Steel-Belted Radius software on multiple computers requires multiple licenses, regardless of whether such computers are physically contained on a single chassis.
  - c. Product purchase documents, paper or electronic user documentation, and/or the particular licenses purchased by Customer may specify limits to Customer's use of the Software. Such limits may restrict use to a maximum number of seats, registered endpoints, concurrent users, sessions, calls, connections, subscribers, clusters, nodes, realms, devices, links, ports or transactions, or require the purchase of separate licenses to use particular features, functionalities, services, applications, operations, or capabilities, or provide throughput, performance, configuration, bandwidth, interface, processing, temporal, or geographical limits. In addition, such limits may restrict the use of the Software to managing certain kinds of networks or require the Software to be used only in conjunction with other specific Software. Customer's use of the Software shall be subject to all such limitations and purchase of all applicable licenses.
  - d. For any trial copy of the Software, Customer's right to use the Software expires 30 days after download, installation or use of the Software. Customer may operate the Software after the 30-day trial period only if Customer pays for a license to do so. Customer may not extend or create an additional trial period by re-installing the Software after the 30-day trial period.
  - e. The Global Enterprise Edition of the Steel-Belted Radius software may be used by Customer only to manage access to Customer's enterprise network. Specifically, service provider customers are expressly prohibited from using the Global Enterprise Edition of the Steel-Belted Radius software to support any commercial network access services.

The foregoing license is not transferable or assignable by Customer. No license is granted herein to any user who did not originally purchase the applicable license(s) for the Software from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.

4. **Use Prohibitions.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, the license provided herein does not permit the Customer to, and Customer agrees not to and shall not: (a) modify, unbundle, reverse engineer, or create derivative works based on the Software; (b) make unauthorized copies of the Software (except as necessary for backup purposes); (c) rent, sell, transfer, or grant any rights in and to any copy of the Software, in any form, to any third party; (d) remove any proprietary notices, labels, or marks on or in any copy of the Software or any product in which the Software is embedded; (e) distribute any copy of the Software to any third party, including as may be embedded in Juniper equipment sold in the secondhand market; (f) use any 'locked' or key-restricted feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability without first purchasing the applicable license(s) and obtaining a valid key from Juniper, even if such feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability is enabled without a key; (g) distribute any key for the Software provided by Juniper to any third party; (h) use the Software in any manner that extends or is broader than the uses purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (i) use the Embedded Software on non-Juniper equipment; (j) use the Software (or make it available for use) on Juniper equipment that the Customer did not originally purchase from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (k) disclose the results of testing or benchmarking of the Software to any third party without the prior written consent of Juniper; or (l) use the Software in any manner other than as expressly provided herein.
5. **Audit.** Customer shall maintain accurate records as necessary to verify compliance with this Agreement. Upon request by Juniper, Customer shall furnish such records to Juniper and certify its compliance with this Agreement.
6. **Confidentiality.** The Parties agree that aspects of the Software and associated documentation are the confidential property of Juniper. As such, Customer shall exercise all reasonable commercial efforts to maintain the Software and associated documentation in confidence, which at a minimum includes restricting access to the Software to Customer employees and contractors having a need to use the Software for Customer's internal business purposes.

7. **Ownership.** Juniper and Juniper's licensors, respectively, retain ownership of all right, title, and interest (including copyright) in and to the Software, associated documentation, and all copies of the Software. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes a transfer or conveyance of any right, title, or interest in the Software or associated documentation, or a sale of the Software, associated documentation, or copies of the Software.

8. **Warranty, Limitation of Liability, Disclaimer of Warranty.** The warranty applicable to the Software shall be as set forth in the warranty statement that accompanies the Software (the "Warranty Statement"). Nothing in this Agreement shall give rise to any obligation to support the Software. Support services may be purchased separately. Any such support shall be governed by a separate, written support services agreement. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF DATA, OR COSTS OR PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES, OR FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT, THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE. IN NO EVENT SHALL JUNIPER BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING FROM UNAUTHORIZED OR IMPROPER USE OF ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE. EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PROVIDED IN THE WARRANTY STATEMENT TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES IN AND TO THE SOFTWARE (WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY, OR OTHERWISE), INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT DOES JUNIPER WARRANT THAT THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY EQUIPMENT OR NETWORK RUNNING THE SOFTWARE, WILL OPERATE WITHOUT ERROR OR INTERRUPTION, OR WILL BE FREE OF VULNERABILITY TO INTRUSION OR ATTACK. In no event shall Juniper's or its suppliers' or licensors' liability to Customer, whether in contract, tort (including negligence), breach of warranty, or otherwise, exceed the price paid by Customer for the Software that gave rise to the claim, or if the Software is embedded in another Juniper product, the price paid by Customer for such other product. Customer acknowledges and agrees that Juniper has set its prices and entered into this Agreement in reliance upon the disclaimers of warranty and the limitations of liability set forth herein, that the same reflect an allocation of risk between the Parties (including the risk that a contract remedy may fail of its essential purpose and cause consequential loss), and that the same form an essential basis of the bargain between the Parties.

9. **Termination.** Any breach of this Agreement or failure by Customer to pay any applicable fees due shall result in automatic termination of the license granted herein. Upon such termination, Customer shall destroy or return to Juniper all copies of the Software and related documentation in Customer's possession or control.

10. **Taxes.** All license fees for the Software are exclusive of taxes, withholdings, duties, or levies (collectively "Taxes"). Customer shall be responsible for paying Taxes arising from the purchase of the license, or importation or use of the Software.

11. **Export.** Customer agrees to comply with all applicable export laws and restrictions and regulations of any United States and any applicable foreign agency or authority, and not to export or re-export the Software or any direct product thereof in violation of any such restrictions, laws or regulations, or without all necessary approvals. Customer shall be liable for any such violations. The version of the Software supplied to Customer may contain encryption or other capabilities restricting Customer's ability to export the Software without an export license.

12. **Commercial Computer Software.** The Software is "commercial computer software" and is provided with restricted rights. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the United States government is subject to restrictions set forth in this Agreement and as provided in DFARS 227.7201 through 227.7202-4, FAR 12.212, FAR 27.405(b)(2), FAR 52.227-19, or FAR 52.227-14(ALT III) as applicable.

13. **Interface Information.** To the extent required by applicable law, and at Customer's written request, Juniper shall provide Customer with the interface information needed to achieve interoperability between the Software and another independently created program, on payment of applicable fee, if any. Customer shall observe strict obligations of confidentiality with respect to such information and shall use such information in compliance with any applicable terms and conditions upon which Juniper makes such information available.

14. **Third Party Software.** Any licensor of Juniper whose software is embedded in the Software and any supplier of Juniper whose products or technology are embedded in (or services are accessed by) the Software shall be a third party beneficiary with respect to this Agreement, and such licensor or vendor shall have the right to enforce this Agreement in its own name as if it were Juniper. In addition, certain third party software may be provided with the Software and is subject to the accompanying license(s), if any, of its respective owner(s). To the extent portions of the Software are distributed under and subject to open source licenses obligating Juniper to make the source code for such portions publicly available (such as the GNU General Public License ("GPL") or the GNU Library General Public License ("LGPL")), Juniper will make such source code portions (including Juniper modifications, as appropriate) available upon request for a period of up to three years from the date of distribution. Such request can be made in writing to Juniper Networks, Inc., 1194 N. Mathilda Ave., Sunnyvale, CA 94089, ATTN: General Counsel. You may obtain a copy of the GPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>, and a copy of the LGPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html>.

15. **Miscellaneous.** This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California without reference to its conflicts of laws principles. The provisions of the U.N. Convention for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply to this Agreement. For any disputes arising under this Agreement, the Parties hereby consent to the personal and exclusive jurisdiction of, and venue in, the state and federal courts within Santa Clara County, California. This Agreement constitutes the entire and sole agreement between Juniper and the Customer with respect to the Software, and supersedes all prior and contemporaneous agreements relating to the Software, whether oral or written (including any inconsistent terms contained in a purchase order), except that the terms of a separate written agreement executed by an authorized Juniper representative and Customer shall govern to the extent such terms are inconsistent or conflict with terms contained herein. No modification to this Agreement nor any waiver of any rights hereunder shall be effective unless expressly assented to in writing by the party to be charged. If any portion of this Agreement is held invalid, the Parties agree that such invalidity shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this Agreement. This Agreement and associated documentation has been written in the English language, and the Parties agree that the English version will govern. (For Canada: Les parties aux présentes confirment leur volonté que cette convention de même que tous les documents y compris tout avis qui s'y rattache, soient rédigés en langue anglaise. (Translation: The parties confirm that this Agreement and all related documentation is and will be in the English language)).

# Abbreviated Table of Contents

	About This Guide	xv
<b>Part 1</b>	<b>J-series Overview</b>	
Chapter 1	Overview of J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Routers	3
Chapter 2	System Overview	11
Chapter 3	Physical Interface Modules Overview	35
Chapter 4	Services Router User Interface Overview	61
<b>Part 2</b>	<b>Installing a Services Router</b>	
Chapter 5	Preparing for Router Installation	79
Chapter 6	Installing and Connecting a Services Router	89
Chapter 7	Establishing Basic Connectivity	103
Chapter 8	Configuring Secure Web Access	123
Chapter 9	Installing and Managing J-series Licenses	131
<b>Part 3</b>	<b>Maintaining Services Router Hardware</b>	
Chapter 10	Replacing and Troubleshooting Hardware Components	143
Chapter 11	Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware	167
<b>Part 4</b>	<b>J-series Requirements and Specifications</b>	
Chapter 12	Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts	175
Chapter 13	Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information	191
<b>Part 5</b>	<b>Index</b>	
	Index	237



# Table of Contents

	<b>About This Guide</b>	<b>xv</b>
	Objectives .....	xv
	Audience .....	xv
	Document Conventions .....	xvi
	Related Juniper Networks Documentation .....	xvii
	Documentation Feedback .....	xx
	Requesting Support .....	xx
<b>Part 1</b>	<b>J-series Overview</b>	
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Overview of J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Routers</b>	<b>3</b>
	J2300 Services Router Overview .....	4
	J4300 Services Router Overview .....	4
	J6300 Services Router Overview .....	5
	J-series Software Features and Licenses .....	5
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>System Overview</b>	<b>11</b>
	J2300 Services Router Hardware Features .....	11
	J2300 Chassis .....	11
	J2300 Routing Engine .....	14
	J2300 Boot Devices .....	14
	J2300 Front Panel .....	15
	Juniper Networks Logo LED .....	15
	ALARM LED .....	16
	Power Button and POWER LED .....	16
	CONFIG Button .....	17
	Console Port .....	17
	J2300 USB Port .....	18
	J2300 Physical Interface Module (PIM) .....	18
	J2300 LAN Ports .....	18
	J2300 Power System .....	19
	J2300 Cooling System .....	19
	J4300 and J6300 Services Router Hardware Features .....	20
	J4300 and J6300 Chassis .....	20
	Midplane .....	25

J4300 and J6300 Routing Engine .....	25
J4300 and J6300 Boot Devices .....	25
J4300 and J6300 Front Panel .....	26
Juniper Networks Logo LED .....	27
ALARM LED .....	27
Power Button and POWER LED .....	27
CONFIG Button .....	27
Console Port .....	27
USB Port .....	27
J4300 and J6300 LAN Ports .....	28
J4300 and J6300 Removable Compact Flash Drive .....	28
J4300 and J6300 Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) .....	29
J4300 Power System .....	29
J6300 Power System .....	29
J4300 and J6300 Cooling System .....	30
Software Overview .....	31
Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine .....	31
Kernel and Microkernel .....	31
JUNOS Software Processes .....	32
User Interfaces .....	33

**Chapter 3****Physical Interface Modules Overview****35**

PIM Terms .....	35
J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs .....	38
J2300 Chassis PIM Summary .....	38
Dual-Port Serial Chassis .....	39
Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI Chassis .....	40
Dual-Port T1 or E1 Chassis .....	41
Dual-Port T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI Chassis .....	43
Dual-Port G.SHDSL Chassis .....	44
Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis .....	45
Field-Replaceable PIMs .....	47
J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIM Summary .....	47
Dual-Port Serial PIM .....	48
Dual-Port T1 or E1 PIM .....	49
Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI PIM .....	51
T3 or E3 PIM .....	53
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM .....	54
4-Port ISDN BRI PIMs .....	55
ADSL PIM .....	56
G.SHDSL PIM .....	58

**Chapter 4****Services Router User Interface Overview****61**

User Interface Overview .....	61
J-Web Overview .....	61
CLI Overview .....	62
Comparison of Configuration Interfaces .....	62
Before You Begin .....	64



Using the J-Web Interface .....	64
Starting the J-Web Interface .....	64
J-Web Layout .....	65
J-Web Sessions .....	67
Using the Command-Line Interface .....	68
CLI Command Hierarchy .....	68
Starting the CLI .....	69
CLI Operational Mode .....	69
CLI Configuration Mode .....	70
CLI Basics .....	71
Editing Keystrokes .....	72
Command Completion .....	73
Online Help .....	73
Configuring the CLI Environment .....	74

## Part 2

## Installing a Services Router

---

### Chapter 5

### Preparing for Router Installation **79**

---

General Site Guidelines .....	79
Desktop and Wall Mounting Requirements .....	80
Rack Requirements .....	80
Rack Size and Strength .....	80
Connection to Building Structure .....	81
Router Environmental Tolerances .....	81
Spacing of Mounting Holes .....	82
Fire Safety Requirements .....	82
Fire Suppression .....	82
Fire Suppression Equipment .....	83
Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications .....	83
Site Electrical Wiring Guidelines .....	83
Signaling Limitations .....	84
Radio Frequency Interference .....	84
Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	84
Router Power Requirements .....	84
AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications .....	85
DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications .....	86
Network Cable Specifications .....	87
ISDN Provisioning .....	87
Site Preparation Checklist .....	88

### Chapter 6

### Installing and Connecting a Services Router **89**

---

Before You Begin .....	89
Unpacking a J-series Services Router .....	90

Installing the J2300 Services Router .....	91
Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Desk .....	91
Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Wall .....	92
Installing the J2300 Services Router into a Rack .....	93
Installing the J4300 or J6300 Services Router .....	94
Connecting Interface Cables to a Services Router .....	95
Chassis Grounding .....	96
Connecting Power .....	96
Connecting AC Power .....	96
Connecting DC Power .....	98
Powering a Services Router On and Off .....	102

## Chapter 7

## Establishing Basic Connectivity **103**

Basic Connectivity Terms .....	103
Basic Connectivity Overview .....	104
Router Identification .....	104
Root Password .....	105
Time Zone and System Time .....	105
Network Settings .....	106
Default Gateway .....	106
Backup Router .....	106
Loopback Address .....	106
Built-In Ethernet Interface Address .....	107
Management Access .....	107
Before You Begin .....	108
Connecting to a Services Router .....	109
Connecting to the J-Web Interface .....	109
Connecting to the CLI Locally .....	111
Connecting to the CLI Remotely .....	113
Configuring the Modem at the Router End .....	113
Connecting the Modem to the Console Port .....	114
Connecting to the CLI at the User End .....	115
Configuring Basic Settings with J-Web Quick Configuration .....	115
Configuring Basic Settings with a Configuration Editor .....	118
Verifying Basic Connectivity .....	121
Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations .....	121

## Chapter 8

## Configuring Secure Web Access **123**

Secure Web Access Terms .....	123
Secure Web Access Overview .....	124
Before You Begin .....	124
Generating SSL Certificates .....	125
Configuring Secure Web Access .....	125
Configuring Secure Web Access with a Configuration Editor .....	128
Verifying Secure Web Access .....	129
Displaying an SSL Certificate Configuration .....	129
Displaying a Secure Access Configuration .....	130

## **Chapter 9                      Installing and Managing J-series Licenses                      131**

J-series License Overview .....	131
Software Feature Licenses .....	131
License Key Components .....	132
Before You Begin .....	132
Managing J-series Licenses with the J-Web Interface .....	133
Adding New Licenses with the J-Web Interface .....	134
Deleting Licenses with the J-Web Interface .....	135
Displaying License Keys with the J-Web Interface .....	135
Downloading Licenses with the J-Web Interface .....	135
Managing J-series Licenses with the CLI .....	135
Adding New Licenses with the CLI .....	135
Deleting a License with the CLI .....	136
Saving License Keys with the CLI .....	136
Verifying J-series License Management .....	137
Displaying Installed Licenses .....	137
Displaying License Usage .....	138
Displaying Installed License Keys .....	138

## **Part 3                      Maintaining Services Router Hardware**

### **Chapter 10                      Replacing and Troubleshooting Hardware Components                      143**

Replacing Hardware Components .....	143
Tools and Parts Required .....	143
Replacing the Console Port Cable .....	144
Replacing a PIM .....	144
Removing a PIM .....	144
Installing a PIM .....	146
Replacing PIM Cables .....	147
Removing a PIM Cable .....	147
Installing a PIM Cable .....	148
Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk .....	148
Removing the Primary Compact Flash Disk .....	149
Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk .....	149
Removing and Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk .....	150
Removing the Removable Compact Flash Disk .....	151
Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk .....	152
Removing and Installing the USB Storage Device .....	153
Removing the USB Storage Device .....	153
Installing the USB Storage Device .....	154
Removing and Installing DRAM Modules .....	154
Removing a DRAM Module .....	155
Installing a DRAM Module .....	157
Replacing Power System Components .....	158
Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord .....	158
Removing an AC Power Supply from a J6300 Router .....	159

Installing an AC Power Supply in a J6300 Router .....	160
Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable .....	161
Removing a DC Power Supply .....	162
Installing a DC Power Supply .....	163
Troubleshooting Hardware Components .....	165
Chassis Alarm Conditions .....	165
Contacting the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center .....	166

**Chapter 11****Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware****167**

Locating Component Serial Numbers .....	167
PIM Serial Number Label .....	169
J6300 Power Supply Serial Number Labels .....	169
Contacting Customer Support .....	169
Information You Might Need to Supply to JTAC .....	170
Return Procedure .....	170
Packing a Router or Component for Shipment .....	171
Tools and Parts Required .....	171
Packing the Services Router for Shipment .....	171
Packing Components for Shipment .....	172

**Part 4****J-series Requirements and Specifications****Chapter 12****Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts****175**

Serial PIM Cable Specifications .....	175
RS-232 DTE Cable Pinout .....	176
RS-232 DCE Cable Pinout .....	177
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE Cable Pinout .....	177
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE Cable Pinout .....	178
EIA-530A DTE Cable Pinout .....	180
EIA-530A DCE Cable Pinout .....	181
V.35 DTE Cable Pinout .....	182
V.35 DCE Cable Pinout .....	183
X.21 DTE Cable Pinout .....	183
X.21 DCE Cable Pinout .....	184
Fast Ethernet RJ-45 Connector Pinout .....	185
Chassis Console Port Pinouts .....	185
E1 and T1 RJ-48 Cable Pinouts .....	186
E3 and T3 BNC Connector Pinout .....	189
ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout .....	189
ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout .....	190

**Chapter 13****Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information****191**

Definition of Safety Warning Levels .....	191
Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	193
General Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	193
Qualified Personnel Warning .....	194
Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage .....	195
Electrical Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	196
General Electrical Safety Guidelines .....	196
AC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines .....	197
DC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines .....	198
Power Sources for Redundant Power Supplies .....	199
DC Power Disconnection Warning .....	199
DC Power Grounding Requirements and Warning .....	201
DC Power Wiring Sequence Warning .....	201
DC Power Wiring Terminations Warning .....	203
Grounded Equipment Warning .....	204
Warning Statement for Norway and Sweden .....	205
In Case of Electrical Accident .....	205
Multiple Power Supplies Disconnection Warning .....	206
Power Disconnection Warning .....	207
TN Power Warning .....	208
Telecommunication Line Cord Warning .....	209
Installation Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	210
Chassis Lifting Guidelines .....	210
Installation Instructions Warning .....	210
Rack-Mounting Requirements and Warnings .....	211
Ramp Warning .....	215
Laser and LED Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	215
General Laser Safety Guidelines .....	216
Class 1 Laser Product Warning .....	216
Class 1 LED Product Warning .....	217
Laser Beam Warning .....	217
Radiation from Open Port Apertures Warning .....	218
Maintenance and Operational Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	219
Battery Handling Warning .....	220
Jewelry Removal Warning .....	221
Lightning Activity Warning .....	222
Operating Temperature Warning .....	223
Product Disposal Warning .....	225
Agency Approvals .....	226
Compliance Statements for Environmental Requirements .....	227
Lithium Battery .....	227
Compliance Statements for EMC Requirements .....	227
Canada .....	227
European Community .....	229
Japan .....	231
Taiwan .....	232
United States .....	232
FCC Part 15 Statement .....	232
FCC Part 68 Statement .....	233

**Part 5**

**Index**

---

Index .....237

# About This Guide

This preface provides the following guidelines for using the *J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Router Getting Started Guide*:

- Objectives on page xv
- Audience on page xv
- Document Conventions on page xvi
- Related Juniper Networks Documentation on page xvii
- Documentation Feedback on page xx
- Requesting Support on page xx

## Objectives

---

This guide contains an overview, basic instructions, and specifications for J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Routers. It explains how to prepare your site for installation, unpack and install a Services Router and its components, power on the router, install licenses, and establish basic connectivity.

J-series Services Router operations are controlled by the JUNOS software. You direct the JUNOS software through either a Web browser or a command-line interface (CLI).



**NOTE:** This guide documents Release 8.5 of the JUNOS software. For additional information about J-series Services Routers—either corrections to or omissions from this guide—see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

---

## Audience

---

This guide is designed for anyone who installs and sets up a J-series Services Router or prepares a site for Services Router installation. The guide is intended for the following audiences:

- Customers with technical knowledge of and experience with networks and the Internet
- Network administrators who install, configure, and manage Internet routers but are unfamiliar with the JUNOS software

- Network administrators who install, configure, and manage products of Juniper Networks

Personnel operating the equipment must be trained and competent; must not conduct themselves in a careless, willfully negligent, or hostile manner; and must abide by the instructions provided by the documentation.

## Document Conventions

Table 1 on page xvi defines the notice icons used in this guide.

**Table 1: Notice Icons**





Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.
	Laser warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury from a laser.

Table 2 on page xvi defines the text and syntax conventions used in this guide.

**Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions**

Convention	Description	Examples
Bold text like this	Represents text that you type.	To enter configuration mode, type the <code>configure</code> command:  user@host> <b>configure</b>
Fixed-width text like this	Represents output that appears on the terminal screen.	user@host> <b>show chassis alarms</b> No alarms currently active
<i>Italic text like this</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Introduces important new terms.</li> <li>■ Identifies book names.</li> <li>■ Identifies RFC and Internet draft titles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ A policy <i>term</i> is a named structure that defines match conditions and actions.</li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ RFC 1997, <i>BGP Communities Attribute</i></li> </ul>



**Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions** (*continued*)

Convention	Description	Examples
<i>Italic text like this</i>	Represents variables (options for which you substitute a value) in commands or configuration statements.	Configure the machine's domain name:  [edit] root@# <b>set system domain-name</b> <i>domain-name</i>
Plain text like this	Represents names of configuration statements, commands, files, and directories; IP addresses; configuration hierarchy levels; or labels on routing platform components.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To configure a stub area, include the <b>stub</b> statement at the [edit protocols ospf area area-id] hierarchy level.</li> <li>■ The console port is labeled <b>CONSOLE</b>.</li> </ul>
< > (angle brackets)	Enclose optional keywords or variables.	stub <default-metric <i>metric</i> >;
(pipe symbol)	Indicates a choice between the mutually exclusive keywords or variables on either side of the symbol. The set of choices is often enclosed in parentheses for clarity.	broadcast   multicast  ( <i>string1</i>   <i>string2</i>   <i>string3</i> )
# (pound sign)	Indicates a comment specified on the same line as the configuration statement to which it applies.	rsvp { # Required for dynamic MPLS only
[ ] (square brackets)	Enclose a variable for which you can substitute one or more values.	community name members [ <i>community-ids</i> ]
Indentation and braces ( { } )	Identify a level in the configuration hierarchy.	[edit] routing-options { static { route default { nexthop <i>address</i> ; retain; } } }
; (semicolon)	Identifies a leaf statement at a configuration hierarchy level.	
<b>J-Web GUI Conventions</b>		
<b>Bold text like this</b>	Represents J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) items you click or select.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ In the Logical Interfaces box, select <b>All Interfaces</b>.</li> <li>■ To cancel the configuration, click <b>Cancel</b>.</li> </ul>
> (bold right angle bracket)	Separates levels in a hierarchy of J-Web selections.	In the configuration editor hierarchy, select <b>Protocols &gt; Ospf</b> .

## Related Juniper Networks Documentation

J-series Services Routers are documented in multiple guides. Although the J-series guides provide instructions for configuring and managing a Services Router with the JUNOS CLI, they are not a comprehensive JUNOS software resource. For complete

documentation of the statements and commands described in J-series guides, see the JUNOS software manuals listed in Table 3 on page xviii.

**Table 3: J-series Guides and Related JUNOS Software Publications**

Chapter in a J-series Guide	Corresponding JUNOS Software Manual
<b>Getting Started Guide for Your Router</b>	
“Services Router User Interface Overview”	■ <i>JUNOS CLI User Guide</i>
“Establishing Basic Connectivity”	■ <i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
<b>J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide</b>	
“Using Services Router Configuration Tools”	■ <i>JUNOS CLI User Guide</i> ■ <i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
“Interfaces Overview”	■ <i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring DS1, DS3, Ethernet, and Serial Interfaces”	■ <i>JUNOS Interfaces Command Reference</i>
“Configuring Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI Interfaces”	
“Configuring Digital Subscriber Line Interfaces”	
“Configuring Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet”	
“Configuring ISDN”	
“Configuring VoIP”	
“Configuring Link Services Interfaces”	■ <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> ■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i>
“Routing Overview”	■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring Static Routes”	■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i>
“Configuring a RIP Network”	
“Configuring an OSPF Network”	
“Configuring the IS-IS Protocol”	
“Configuring BGP Sessions”	
<b>J-series Services Router Advanced WAN Access Configuration Guide</b>	
“Multiprotocol Label Switching Overview”	■ <i>JUNOS MPLS Applications Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring Signaling Protocols for Traffic Engineering”	■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i> ■ <i>JUNOS VPNs Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring Virtual Private Networks”	
“Configuring CLNS VPNs”	

**Table 3: J-series Guides and Related JUNOS Software Publications (continued)**

Chapter in a J-series Guide	Corresponding JUNOS Software Manual
“Configuring IPSec for Secure Packet Exchange”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i></li> </ul>
“Multicast Overview”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Multicast Protocols Configuration Guide</i></li> </ul>
“Configuring a Multicast Network”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i></li> </ul>
“Configuring Data Link Switching”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i></li> </ul>
“Policy Framework Overview”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Policy Framework Configuration Guide</i></li> </ul>
“Configuring Routing Policies”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i></li> </ul>
“Configuring NAT”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i></li> </ul>
“Configuring Stateful Firewall Filters and NAT”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Policy Framework Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i></li> </ul>
“Configuring Stateless Firewall Filters”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i></li> </ul>
“Class-of-Service Overview”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Class of Service Configuration Guide</i></li> </ul>
“Configuring Class of Service”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i></li> </ul>
<b>J-series Services Router Administration Guide</b>	
“Managing User Authentication and Access”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ <i>Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS</i></li> </ul>
“Setting Up USB Modems for Remote Management”	<i>JUNOS Network Management Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring SNMP for Network Management”	
“Configuring the Router as a DHCP Server”	<i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring Autoinstallation”	
“Automating Network Operations and Troubleshooting”	<i>JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide</i>
“Monitoring the Router and Routing Operations”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Interfaces Command Reference</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i></li> </ul>
“Monitoring Events and Managing System Log Files”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i></li> <li>■ <i>Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS</i></li> </ul>

**Table 3: J-series Guides and Related JUNOS Software Publications** *(continued)*

Chapter in a J-series Guide	Corresponding JUNOS Software Manual
“Configuring and Monitoring Alarms”	<i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
“Performing Software Upgrades and Reboots”	<i>JUNOS Software Installation and Upgrade Guide</i>
“Using Services Router Diagnostic Tools”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Interfaces Command Reference</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i></li> </ul>
“Configuring Packet Capture”	<i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring RPM Probes”	<i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i>

## Documentation Feedback

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation. You can send your comments to [techpubs-comments@juniper.net](mailto:techpubs-comments@juniper.net), or fill out the documentation feedback form at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/docbug/docbugreport.html>. If you are using e-mail, be sure to include the following information with your comments:

- Document name
- Document part number
- Page number
- Software release version

## Requesting Support

For technical support, open a support case with the Case Manager link at <http://www.juniper.net/support/> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (from the United States, Canada, or Mexico) or 1-408-745-9500 (from elsewhere).

## **Part 1**

# **J-series Overview**

- Overview of J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Routers on page 3
- System Overview on page 11
- Physical Interface Modules Overview on page 35
- Services Router User Interface Overview on page 61



## Chapter 1

# Overview of J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Routers

J-series Services Routers provide stable, reliable, and efficient IP routing, WAN and LAN connectivity, and management services for small to medium-sized enterprise networks. Services Routers typically connect small, branch, or regional offices to a central site router, and link Internet service provider (ISP) networks.

All J-series Services Routers run the JUNOS Internet software, which offers many advanced routing and security services. For more information about software features, see “J-series Software Features and Licenses” on page 5. A single, common JUNOS code base simplifies deployment, patches, and software upgrades.

You can use two user interfaces to monitor, configure, troubleshoot, and manage a Services Router:

- J-Web interface—A Web-based graphical interface that allows you to operate a router without commands. The J-Web interface provides access to all JUNOS functionality and features. Quick Configuration wizards simplify basic configuration and minimize the risk of operator error.
- JUNOS command-line interface—A Juniper Networks command shell that runs on top of a UNIX-based operating system kernel. The CLI is a straightforward command interface. On a single line, you type commands that are executed when you press the Enter key. The CLI provides command Help and command completion.

For an introduction to the J-Web and CLI interfaces, see “Services Router User Interface Overview” on page 61. For more information, see the *J-Web Interface User Guide* and the *JUNOS CLI User Guide*.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- J2300 Services Router Overview on page 4
- J4300 Services Router Overview on page 4
- J6300 Services Router Overview on page 5
- J-series Software Features and Licenses on page 5

## J2300 Services Router Overview

---

The J2300 Services Router is primarily designed for remote or branch offices.

The J2300 Services Router features a smaller chassis (1 U) with a nonredundant AC or DC power supply, 256 MB to 1 GB of memory, a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port for external storage, and installation options for desktop installation, wall mounting, or rack mounting. Each J2300 Services Router has two Fast Ethernet LAN interfaces and two additional physical interfaces that depend on the chassis type. Available chassis types include the following:

- Dual-Port E1 chassis
- Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI S/T chassis
- Dual-Port Serial chassis
- Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI S/T or U chassis
- Dual-Port T1 chassis
- Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI U chassis
- Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis
- Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis

## J4300 Services Router Overview

---

The J4300 Services Router is primarily designed for regional or branch offices.

The J4300 Services Router has a larger chassis (2 U) with a nonredundant AC or DC power supply, 256 MB to 1 GB of memory, and a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port for external storage. Each J4300 Services Router has two fixed Fast Ethernet LAN interfaces, and six open slots in which you can install the following Physical Interface Modules (PIMs):

- ADSL 2/2 + Annex A PIM (1 port)
- ADSL 2/2 + Annex B PIM (1 port)
- Channelized T1/E1 PIM
- Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1
- Dual-Port E1 PIM
- Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM
- G.SHDSL PIM (2 ports)
- 4-port ISDN BRI S/T or U PIM
- Dual-Port Serial PIM
- Dual-Port T1 PIM



## J6300 Services Router Overview

The J6300 Services Router is designed primarily for large branches or regional offices.

The J6300 Services Router has a larger chassis (2 U) with an optional redundant AC or DC power supply, 256 MB to 1 GB of memory, and a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port for external storage. Each J6300 Services Router has two fixed Fast Ethernet LAN interfaces, and six open slots in which you can install the following Physical Interface Modules (PIMs):

- ADSL 2/2 + Annex A PIM (1 port)
- ADSL 2/2 + Annex B PIM (1 port)
- Channelized T1/E1 PIM
- DS3 (T3) PIM (1 port)
- Dual-Port E1 PIM
- E3 PIM (1 port)
- Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM
- G.SHDSL PIM (2 ports)
- 4-port ISDN BRI S/T or U PIM
- Dual-Port Serial PIM
- Dual-Port T1 PIM

## J-series Software Features and Licenses

J-series Services Routers provide the software features listed in Table 4 on page 5. You must purchase a separate software license to obtain some software features. For more information about licenses, see “Installing and Managing J-series Licenses” on page 131.

**Table 4: Summary of J-series Features and License Requirements**

Feature Category	J-series Feature	Separate License
Internet Protocols	IPv4	
	IPv6 routing and forwarding	

**Table 4: Summary of J-series Features and License Requirements** *(continued)*

Feature Category	J-series Feature	Separate License
<b>Routing and Multicast</b>	Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)	
	Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)	License required for advanced BGP (route reflectors)
	Routing Information Protocol version 1 (RIPv1) and RIPv2	
	Static routes	
	Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS)	
	Connectionless Network Services (CLNS):	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ End system-to-Intermediate system (ES-IS) protocol</li> <li>■ IS-IS extensions</li> <li>■ BGP extensions</li> <li>■ Static routes</li> </ul>	
	Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS):	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Layer 2 and Layer 3 virtual private networks (VPNs)</li> <li>■ VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) table labels</li> <li>■ Traffic engineering protocols: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Label Distribution Protocol (LDP)</li> <li>■ Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	Multicast:	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Internet Group Management Protocol version 3 (IGMPv3)</li> <li>■ Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM)</li> <li>■ Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol (DVMRP)</li> <li>■ Single-source multicast</li> </ul>	
<b>IP Address Management</b>	Static addresses	
	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	

**Table 4: Summary of J-series Features and License Requirements** *(continued)*

Feature Category	J-series Feature	Separate License
<b>Encapsulation</b>	Ethernet:	
	■ Media access control (MAC) encapsulation	
	■ 802.1p tagging	
	■ Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE)	
	■ Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) for asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) or symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL)	
	■ Circuit cross-connect (CCC)	
	■ Translational cross-connect (TCC)	
	Synchronous Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)	
	Frame Relay	
	High-level Data Link Control (HDLC)	
<b>Traffic Management</b>	Serial encapsulation over RS-232, RS-449, X.21, V.35, and EIA-530 connections	
	802.1Q filtering and forwarding	
	Multilink Frame Relay	
	Multilink PPP	
	Data link switching (DLSw)	License required
	Policing and shaping	
	Class-based queuing with prioritization	
	Weighted random early detection (WRED)	
	Queuing by virtual LAN (VLAN), data link connection identifier (DLCI), interface, or bundle	

**Table 4: Summary of J-series Features and License Requirements** *(continued)*

Feature Category	J-series Feature	Separate License
<b>Security</b>	Common Criteria	
	Network attack detection	
	Denial-of-service (DoS) and distributed DoS protection	
	Generic routing encapsulation (GRE), IP-over-IP, and IP Security (IPSec) tunnels	
	Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) 128-, 192-, and 256-bit.	
	56-bit Data Encryption Standard (DES) and 168-bit 3DES encryption	
	MD5 and Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA-1) authentication	
	Replay attack prevention	
	Stateful firewall packet filters	
	Network Address Translation (NAT)	
<b>Voice Support</b>	Compressed Real-Time Transport Protocol (CRTP)	
<b>High Availability</b>	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)	
	Graceful restart according to IETF standards	
	Redundant interfaces	
<b>System Management</b>	JUNOScope network manager	
	J-Web browser interface—for Services Router configuration and management	
	JUNOScript XML application programming interface (API)	
	JUNOS command-line interface (CLI)—for Services Router configuration and management through the console, Telnet, SSH, or J-Web CLI terminal	
	Simple Network Management Protocol version 1 (SNMPv1) and SNMPv2	
<b>Traffic Analysis</b>	J-Flow flow monitoring and accounting	License required for J-Flow
	Packet capture (PCAP)	
	Real-time performance monitoring (RPM)	
<b>Activity Logging and Monitoring</b>	System log	
	J-Web event viewer	
	Traceroute	

**Table 4: Summary of J-series Features and License Requirements** *(continued)*

Feature Category	J-series Feature	Separate License
<b>Administration</b>	Supports the following external administrator databases:	
	■ RADIUS	
	■ TACACS +	
	Autoinstallation	
	Configuration rollback	
	Button-operated configuration rescue (CONFIG)	
	Confirmation of configuration changes	
	Software upgrades	
	Supports the following features for automating network operations and troubleshooting:	
	■ Commit scripts	
	■ Operation scripts	
	■ Event policies	



## Chapter 2

# System Overview

J-series Services Routers are available in several models.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- J2300 Services Router Hardware Features on page 11
- J4300 and J6300 Services Router Hardware Features on page 20
- Software Overview on page 31

### J2300 Services Router Hardware Features

---

This section contains the following topics:

- J2300 Chassis on page 11
- J2300 Routing Engine on page 14
- J2300 Front Panel on page 15
- J2300 Physical Interface Module (PIM) on page 18
- J2300 LAN Ports on page 18
- J2300 Power System on page 19
- J2300 Cooling System on page 19

### J2300 Chassis

The J2300 Services Router chassis is a rigid sheet metal structure that houses all the other router components (see Figure 1 on page 12, Figure 2 on page 12, and Figure 4 on page 13). The chassis can be installed in many types of racks or cabinets, on a wall, or on a desk. For information about acceptable rack types, see “Rack Requirements” on page 80.

In addition to the features described in subsequent sections, the chassis includes the following features (see Figure 1 on page 12 through Figure 3 on page 13):

- One pair of metal brackets that can be attached to the side of the chassis. You can use the brackets for mounting the chassis in a rack or cabinet or on a wall.
- One electrostatic discharge (ESD) point, a PEM nut at the rear of the chassis.

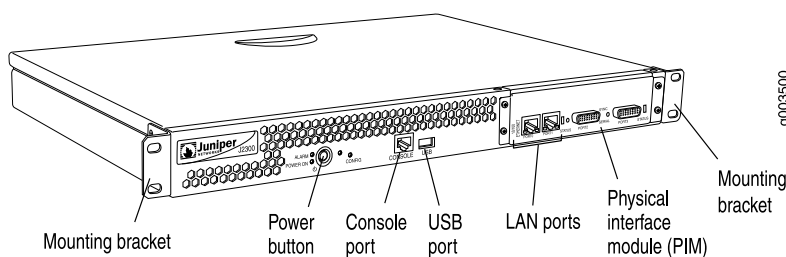


**CAUTION:** Before removing or installing components of a functioning router, attach an ESD strap to an ESD point and place the other end of the strap around your bare wrist. Failure to use an ESD strap could result in damage to the router.

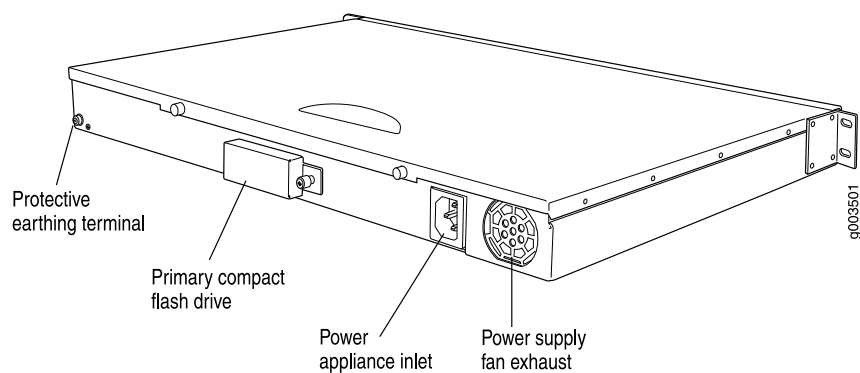
The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation. The protective earthing terminal on the rear of the chassis is provided to connect the router to ground (see Figure 2 on page 12). Additional grounding is provided to an AC-powered router when you plug its power supply into a grounded AC power receptacle.

For additional safety information, see “Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information” on page 191.

**Figure 1: Front of J2300 Chassis**



**Figure 2: Rear of J2300 AC-Powered Chassis**





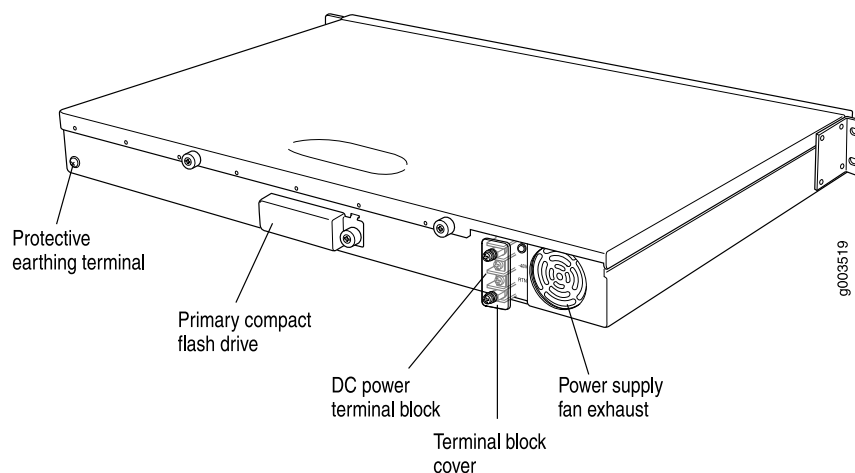
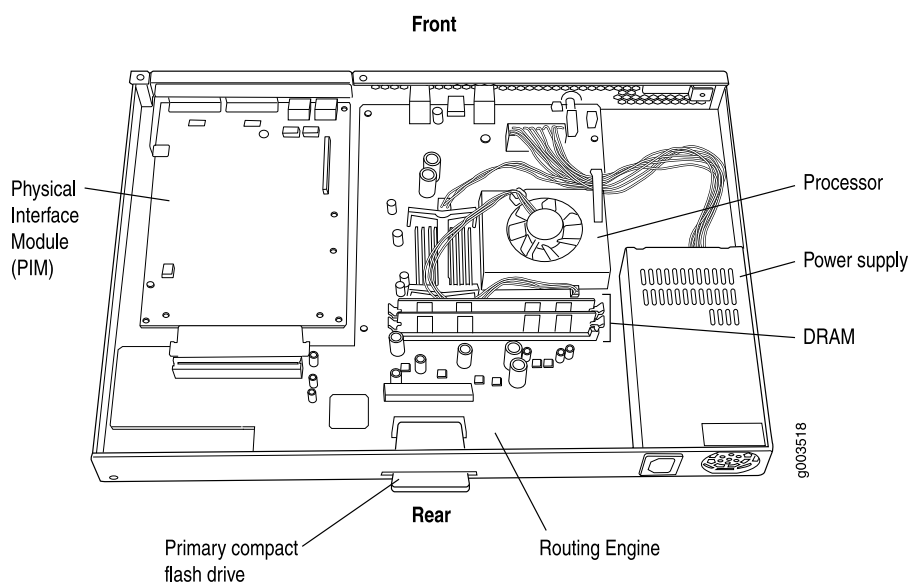
**Figure 3: Rear of J2300 DC-Powered Chassis****Figure 4: J2300 Hardware Components**

Table 5 on page 13 summarizes the physical specifications for the J2300 router chassis.

**Table 5: J2300 Physical Specifications**

Description	Value
Chassis dimensions	■ 1.75 in. (4.4 cm) high
	■ 17.25 in. (43.8 cm) wide—19 in. (48.3 cm) wide with mounting brackets attached
	■ 12.37 in. (31.4 cm) deep—plus 0.5 in. (1.27 cm) of hardware that protrudes from the chassis front

**Table 5: J2300 Physical Specifications** *(continued)*

Description	Value
Router weight	12 lb (5.4 kg)

## J2300 Routing Engine

The Routing Engine provides three main functions:

- Creates the packet forwarding switch fabric for the Services Router, providing route lookup, filtering, and switching on incoming data packets, then directing outbound packets to the appropriate interface for transmission to the network.
- Maintains the routing tables used by the router and controls the routing protocols that run on the router.
- Provides control and monitoring functions for the router, including controlling power and monitoring system status.

The Routing Engine consists of the following components:

- Processor—Creates the packet forwarding switch fabric for the router and runs JUNOS Internet software to maintain the router's routing tables and routing protocols.
- DRAM—Buffers incoming packets and provides storage for the routing and forwarding tables and for other Routing Engine processes.

To view the amount of DRAM installed on your router, issue the **show chassis routing-engine** command.

- EPROM—Stores the serial number of the Routing Engine.

To view the serial number of the Routing Engine, issue either the **show chassis routing-engine** command or the **show chassis hardware** command.

- Compact flash drive—Provides primary storage for software images, configuration files, and microcode. The primary compact flash drive is accessible from the rear of the router. For information about replacing the primary compact flash drive, see “Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk” on page 148.

## J2300 Boot Devices

The J2300 Services Router can boot from two devices:

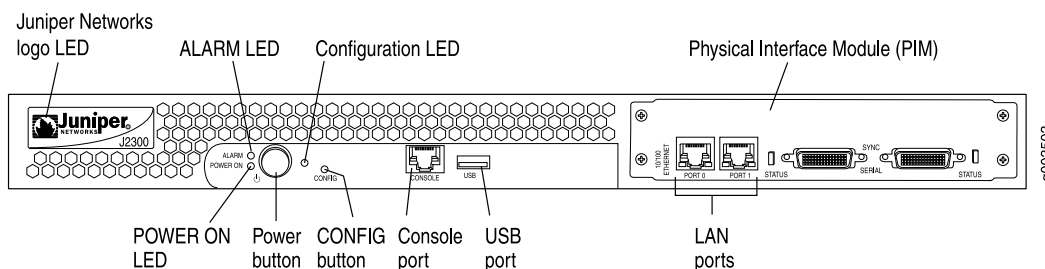
- Primary compact flash disk
- USB storage device

Normally, the Services Router boots from the primary compact flash disk. If the compact flash disk fails, the router attempts to boot from the removable USB storage device, if present, which is the alternate boot device.

## J2300 Front Panel

The front panel of the Services Router (Figure 5 on page 15) allows you to view router status LEDs, access the console port, and perform simple control functions.

**Figure 5: Front Panel of J2300 Services Router**



For information about the components of the front panel, see the following sections:

- Juniper Networks Logo LED on page 15
- ALARM LED on page 16
- Power Button and POWER LED on page 16
- CONFIG Button on page 17
- Console Port on page 17
- J2300 USB Port on page 18

### Juniper Networks Logo LED

The Juniper Networks logo LED is located on the top-left corner on the front panel (see Figure 5 on page 15). Table 6 on page 15 describes the blue Juniper Networks logo LED.

**Table 6: Juniper Networks Logo LED**

Color	State	Description
Blue	Off	Router is unplugged, powered off, or malfunctioning.
	On steadily	Router is functioning normally.
	Blinking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Router is booting and not yet forwarding traffic.</li> <li>Or</li> <li>■ Router is operating but unable to forward traffic because of a problem.</li> </ul>
For a list of alarms that can occur on the router, see “Chassis Alarm Conditions” on page 165.		

## ALARM LED

The **ALARM** LED is located to the left of the power button on the front panel (see Figure 5 on page 15). The yellow (amber) LED lights to indicate a critical condition that can result in a system shutdown or a less severe condition that requires monitoring or maintenance. When the condition is corrected, the light turns off.



**NOTE:** The **ALARM** LED on the Services Router lights yellow whether the alarm condition is major (red) or minor (yellow).

To deactivate alarms, you must clear the condition that caused the alarm. For a list of alarms that can occur on the router, see “Chassis Alarm Conditions” on page 165.

## Power Button and POWER LED

The power button is located on the left side of the front panel (see Figure 5 on page 15). You can use the power button to power the Services Router on and off. When you power on the router, the Routing Engine boots as the power supply completes its startup sequence.

The **POWER** LED is located to the left of the power button on the front panel. Table 7 on page 16 describes the **POWER** LED.

**Table 7: POWER LED**

Color	State	Description
Green	Off	Router is unplugged, or is powered off and in standby mode.
	On steadily	Router is powered on and is either booting or functioning normally.
	Blinking	Power button has been pressed and quickly released, and the router is gracefully shutting down.

After the router is powered on, status indicators—such as LEDs on the front panel and **show chassis** command output—can take up to 60 seconds to indicate that the power supply is functioning normally. Ignore error indicators that appear during the first 60 seconds.

If you need to power off the router after the Routing Engine finishes booting, use the J-Web interface or the CLI to halt the Services Router first. For instructions, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

To power off a Services Router, you can shut it down in one of the following ways:

- Graceful shutdown—Press and release the power button. The router begins gracefully shutting down the operating system and then powers itself off.

- Immediate shutdown—Press the power button and hold it for more than 5 seconds. The router immediately powers itself off without shutting down the operating system.

### CONFIG Button

Use the **CONFIG** button to return the router to either the rescue configuration or the factory default configuration. The **CONFIG** button is recessed to prevent it from being pressed accidentally.

The **CONFIG** button performs two recovery operations:

- Rescue—Press and release the **CONFIG** button to load and commit the rescue configuration, if you have set it. To set the rescue configuration, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.
- Clear—Press and hold the **CONFIG** button for 15 seconds or more, until the configuration LED blinks red to indicate the clear operation is in progress. The clear operation deletes *all* configurations on the router (including the rescue configuration and backup configurations) and loads and commits the factory configuration.



**CAUTION:** Pressing and holding the **CONFIG** button for 15 seconds or more deletes *all* configurations on the router and loads and commits the factory configuration.

You can change the default behavior of the **CONFIG** button. For more information, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

Table 8 on page 17 describes the configuration LED.

**Table 8: Configuration LED**

Color	State	Description
Green	Blinking	Rescue configuration is being loaded.
	On steadily	Rescue or factory configuration is loaded and committed.
Red	Blinking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Current committed configuration and all previous versions are being deleted.</li> <li>■ Factory configuration is being loaded.</li> </ul>
	On steadily	Operation to return the router to the rescue or factory configuration failed.

### Console Port

You can use the console port on the chassis front panel to connect to the Routing Engine through an RJ-45 serial cable. From the chassis console port, you can use the

CLI to configure the router. The console port is configured as data terminal equipment (DTE) and supports the RS-232 (EIA-232) standard.

For information about securing the chassis console port, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

For pinout information, see “Chassis Console Port Pinouts” on page 185.

## J2300 USB Port

The slot labeled **USB** on the front panel of the router (see Figure 5 on page 15) accepts a USB storage device or USB storage device adapter with a compact flash disk installed, as defined in the *CompactFlash Specification* published by the CompactFlash Association. When the USB storage device is installed and configured, it automatically acts as a secondary boot device, if the primary compact flash disk fails on startup. Depending on the size of the USB storage device, you can also configure it to receive any core files generated during a failure. For information about configuring a USB storage device, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.



**NOTE:** For a list of supported USB storage devices, see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

---

## J2300 Physical Interface Module (PIM)

The PIMs in J2300 Services Routers are fixed and not interchangeable, with different chassis types providing different PIMs. The PIMs provide the physical connection to various network media types. J2300 Services Routers are available with different types of chassis. Each chassis type contains two Fast Ethernet LAN ports, one set of WAN ports, and additional fixed PIMs of different types. For more information, see “J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs” on page 38.

For pinouts of PIM cable connectors, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

## J2300 LAN Ports

The J2300 Services Routers include two fixed 10/100Base-TX Fast Ethernet ports. The LAN ports receive incoming packets from the network and transmit outgoing packets to the network. Each port is equipped with a dedicated network processor that forwards incoming data packets to the Routing Engine, and receives outgoing data packets from the Routing Engine.

The LAN ports are located on the front panel of the router (see Figure 5 on page 15) and are configured like the ports on a Physical Interface Module (PIM). The LAN ports are not field-replaceable. The ports, labeled **PORT 0** and **PORT 1**, correspond to **fe-0/0/0** and **fe-0/0/1**, respectively, for configuration.

For pinouts of Fast Ethernet cable connectors, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

Each port has two LEDs located on each side of the bottom of the port.  
Table 9 on page 19 describes the LAN port LEDs.

**Table 9: LEDs for Fast Ethernet LAN Ports**

Function	Color	State	Description
LINK/SPEED	Green (100 Mbps)	On steadily	Online and link is operational.
	Yellow (10 Mbps)		
	Red	Disconnected	Link is unavailable.
ACTIVITY	Green	Blinking	Online with network traffic.
		On steadily	Online without traffic.

## **J2300 Power System**

The J2300 Services Router uses either AC or DC power. The autosensing power supply (see Figure 2 on page 12 or Figure 3 on page 13) distributes the different output voltages to the router components according to their voltage requirements.

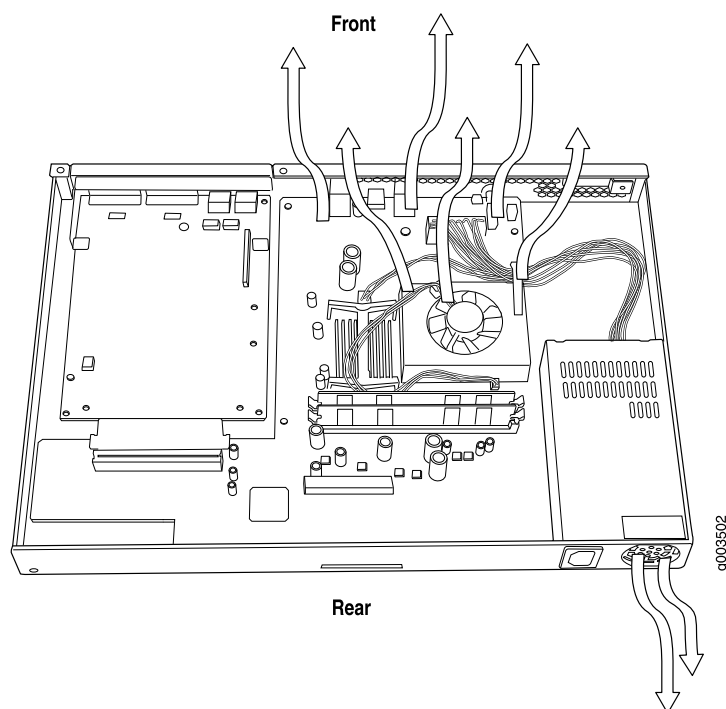
The power supply is fixed in the chassis and is not field-replaceable. An AC power supply has a single AC appliance inlet that requires a dedicated AC power feed. The DC power supply has a terminal block that provides a single DC input (–48 VDC and return) requiring a dedicated 15 A (–48 VDC) circuit breaker.

For information about site power preparations, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 83. For information about connecting the router to power and ground, see “Connecting Power” on page 96.

## **J2300 Cooling System**

The cooling system includes a fan on the rear of the Routing Engine's processor and a fan on the power supply.

The airflow produced by these fans keeps router components within the acceptable temperature range (see Figure 6 on page 20). The speed of the fan at the rear of the processor is adjusted automatically according to current temperature.

**Figure 6: Airflow Through the J2300 Chassis**

The Routing Engine monitors the temperature of the router components. If the ambient maximum temperature specification is exceeded and the router cannot be adequately cooled, the Routing Engine shuts down the hardware components.

## J4300 and J6300 Services Router Hardware Features

This section contains the following topics:

- J4300 and J6300 Chassis on page 20
- Midplane on page 25
- J4300 and J6300 Routing Engine on page 25
- J4300 and J6300 Front Panel on page 26
- J4300 and J6300 Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) on page 29
- J4300 Power System on page 29
- J6300 Power System on page 29
- J4300 and J6300 Cooling System on page 30

### J4300 and J6300 Chassis

The J4300 and J6300 Services Router chassis is a rigid sheet metal structure that houses all the other router components (see Figure 7 on page 21 through



Figure 12 on page 24). The chassis can be installed in many types of racks or cabinets. For information about acceptable rack types, see “Rack Requirements” on page 80.

In addition to the features described in subsequent sections, the chassis includes the following features:

- One pair of metal brackets attached to the side of the chassis. You can use the brackets for mounting the chassis in a rack or cabinet.
- One protective earthing terminal, a PEM nut at the rear of the chassis.
- One electrostatic discharge (ESD) point, a banana plug receptacle at the front of the chassis.

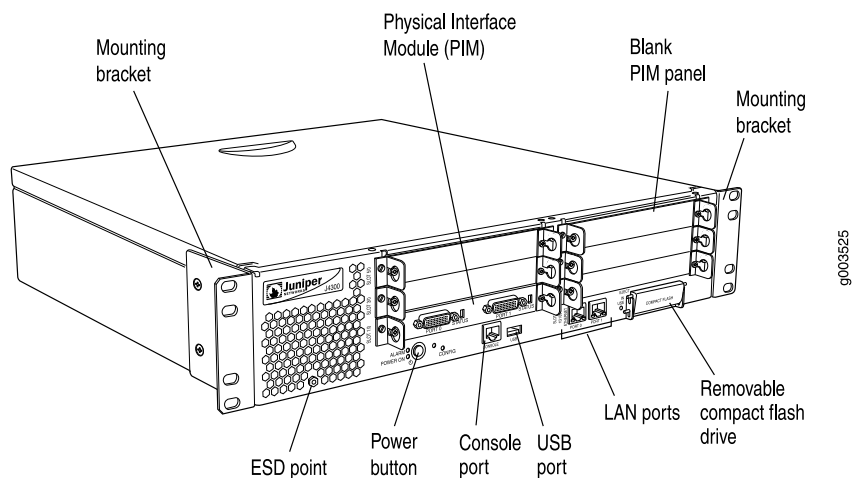


**CAUTION:** Before removing or installing components of a functioning router, attach an ESD strap to an ESD point and place the other end of the strap around your bare wrist. Failure to use an ESD strap could result in damage to the router.

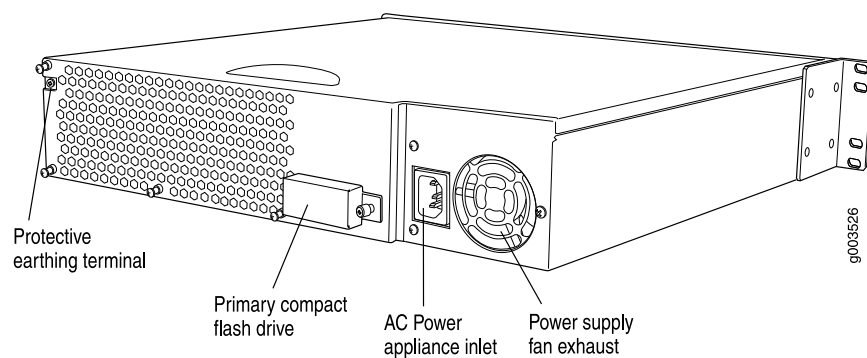
The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation. The protective earthing terminal on the rear of the chassis is provided to connect the router to ground (see Figure 8 on page 22). Additional grounding is provided to an AC-powered router when you plug its power supply into a grounded AC power receptacle.

For additional safety information, see “Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information” on page 191.

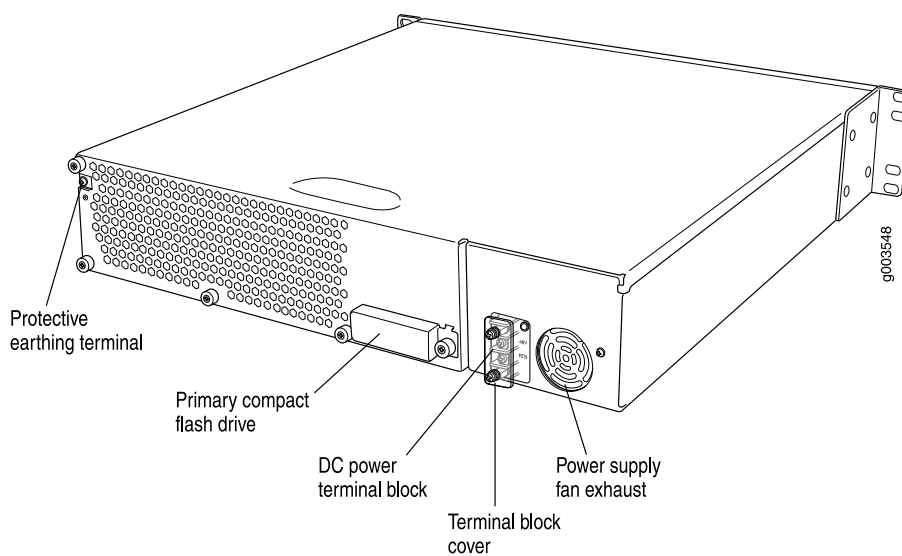
**Figure 7: Front of J4300 and J6300 Chassis**



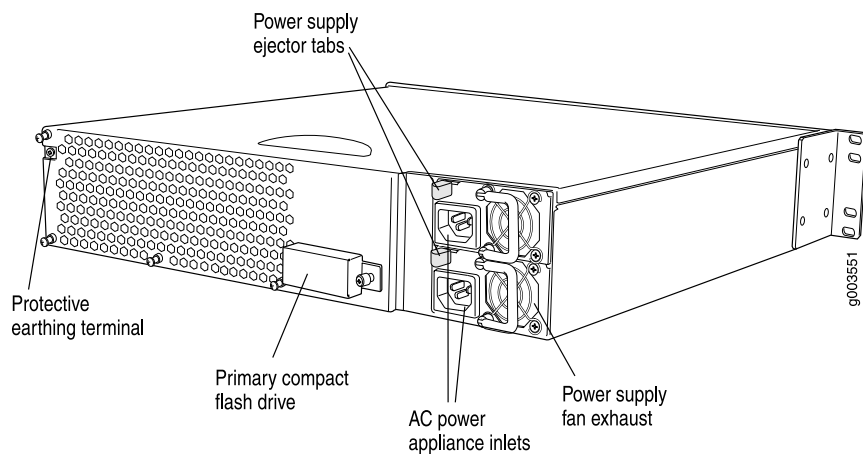
**Figure 8: Rear of AC-Powered J4300 Chassis**

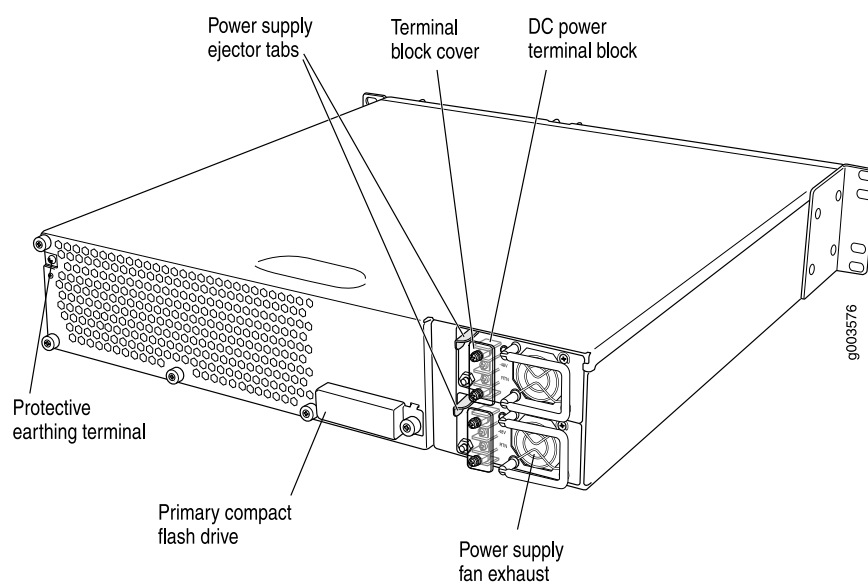


**Figure 9: Rear of DC-Powered J4300 Chassis**



**Figure 10: Rear of AC-Powered J6300 Chassis**



**Figure 11: Rear of DC-Powered J6300 Chassis**

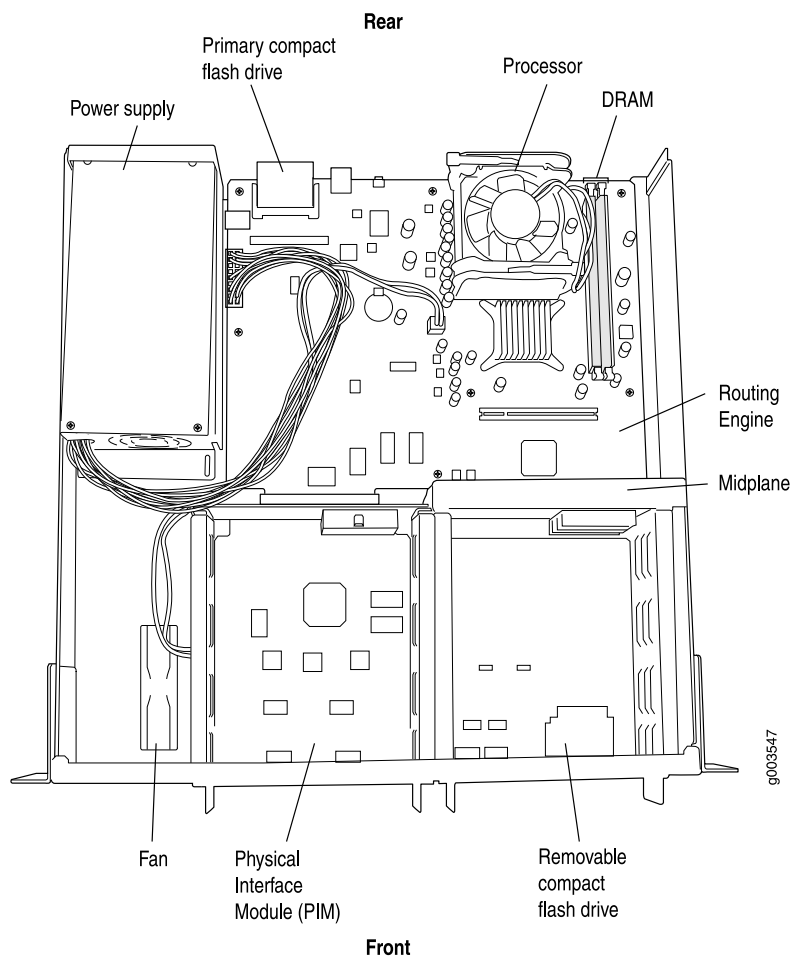
**Figure 12: J4300 and J6300 Hardware Components**

Table 10 on page 24 summarizes the physical specifications for the J4300 and J6300 router chassis.

**Table 10: J4300 and J6300 Physical Specifications**

Description	Value
Chassis dimensions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ 3.50 in. (8.9 cm) high</li> <li>■ 17.00 in. (43.2 cm) wide—19 in. (48.3 cm) wide with mounting brackets attached</li> <li>■ 19.00 in. (48.3 cm) deep—plus 0.5 in. (1.27 cm) of hardware that protrudes from the chassis front</li> </ul>
Router weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ J4300 router minimum configuration (no PIMs): 18 lb (8.2 kg)</li> <li>■ J4300 router maximum configuration (six PIMs): 21 lb (9.5 kg)</li> <li>■ J6300 router minimum configuration (no PIMs and one power supply): 18.5 lb (8.4 kg)</li> <li>■ J6300 router maximum configuration (six PIMs and two power supplies): 24 lb (10.9 kg)</li> </ul>

## Midplane

The midplane is located in the center of the chassis and forms the rear of the PIM card cage (see Figure 12 on page 24). You install the PIMs into the midplane from the front of the chassis. Data packets are transferred across the midplane from the PIM to the Routing Engine, and from the Routing Engine across the midplane to the destination PIM.

## J4300 and J6300 Routing Engine

The Routing Engine provides three main functions:

- Creates the packet forwarding switch fabric for the Services Router, providing route lookup, filtering, and switching on incoming data packets, then directing outbound packets to the appropriate interface for transmission to the network.
- Maintains the routing tables used by the router and controls the routing protocols that run on the router.
- Provides control and monitoring functions for the router, including controlling power and monitoring system status.

The Routing Engine consists of the following components:

- Processor—Creates the packet forwarding switch fabric for the router and runs JUNOS Internet software to maintain the router's routing tables and routing protocols.
- DRAM—Buffers incoming packets and provides storage for the routing and forwarding tables and for other Routing Engine processes.

To view the amount of DRAM installed on your router, issue the **show chassis routing-engine** command.

- EPROM—Stores the serial number of the Routing Engine.

To view the serial number of the Routing Engine, issue either the **show chassis routing-engine** command or the **show chassis hardware** command.

- Compact flash drive—Provides primary storage for software images, configuration files, and microcode. The primary compact flash drive is accessible from the rear of the router. For information about replacing the primary compact flash drive, see “Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk” on page 148.



**NOTE:** The J4300 and J6300 Services Routers also provide a slot on the front panel in which you can insert an additional removable compact flash. For information about the removable compact flash, see “J4300 and J6300 Removable Compact Flash Drive” on page 28.

---

## J4300 and J6300 Boot Devices

The J4300 and J6300 Services Routers can boot from three devices:

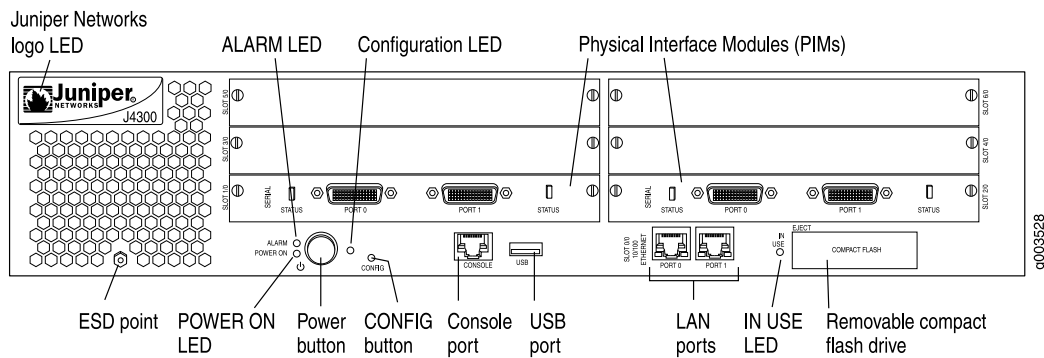
- Primary compact flash disk
- Removable compact flash disk
- USB storage device

Normally, the Services Router boots from the primary compact flash disk. If the compact flash disk fails, the router attempts to boot from the removable compact flash disk, which is the alternate boot device. If the removable compact flash disk is not present or fails, the router attempts to boot from the USB storage device.

## J4300 and J6300 Front Panel

The front panel of a J4300 or J6300 Services Router (Figure 13 on page 26) allows you to view router status LEDs, access the console port, connect to LAN ports, and perform simple control functions.

**Figure 13: Front Panel of J4300 and J6300**



The components of the front panel, from left to right, are described in the following sections:

- Juniper Networks Logo LED on page 27
- ALARM LED on page 27
- Power Button and POWER LED on page 27
- CONFIG Button on page 27
- Console Port on page 27
- USB Port on page 27
- J4300 and J6300 LAN Ports on page 28
- J4300 and J6300 Removable Compact Flash Drive on page 28

### Juniper Networks Logo LED

The Juniper Networks logo LED on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers functions identically to the Juniper Networks logo LED on the J2300 Services Router. See “Juniper Networks Logo LED” on page 15.

### ALARM LED

The ALARM LED on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers functions identically to the ALARM LED on the J2300 Services Router. See “ALARM LED” on page 16.

### Power Button and POWER LED

The power button and POWER LED on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers function identically to the power button and POWER LED on the J2300 Services Router. See “Power Button and POWER LED” on page 16.

### CONFIG Button

The CONFIG button and LED on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers function identically to the CONFIG button and configuration LED on the J2300 Services Router. See “CONFIG Button” on page 17.

### Console Port

You can use the console port on the chassis front panel to connect to the Routing Engine through an RJ-45 serial cable. From the chassis console port, you can use the CLI to configure the router. The console port is configured as data terminal equipment (DTE) and supports the RS-232 (EIA-232) standard.

For information about securing the chassis console port, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

For pinout information, see “Chassis Console Port Pinouts” on page 185.

### USB Port

The slot labeled USB on the front panel of the J-series Services Router (see Figure 13 on page 26) accepts a USB storage device or USB storage device adapter with a compact flash disk installed, as defined in the *CompactFlash Specification* published by the CompactFlash Association. When the USB storage device is installed and configured, it automatically acts as a secondary boot device, if the primary or removable compact flash disk fails on startup. Depending on the size of the USB storage device, you can also configure it to receive any core files generated during a failure. For information about configuring a USB storage device, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.



**NOTE:** For a list of supported USB storage devices, see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

---

## J4300 and J6300 LAN Ports

The J4300 and J6300 Services Routers include two fixed 10/100Base-TX Fast Ethernet ports. The LAN ports receive incoming packets from the network and transmit outgoing packets to the network. Each port is equipped with a dedicated network processor that forwards incoming data packets to the Routing Engine, and receives outgoing data packets from the Routing Engine.

The LAN ports are located on the front panel of the router (see Figure 13 on page 26) and are configured like the ports on a Physical Interface Module (PIM). The LAN ports are not field-replaceable. The ports, labeled **PORT 0** and **PORT 1**, correspond to **fe-0/0/0** and **fe-0/0/1**, respectively, for configuration.

For pinouts of Fast Ethernet cable connectors, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

Each port has two LEDs located on each side of the bottom of the port. Table 9 on page 19 describes the LAN port LEDs.

## J4300 and J6300 Removable Compact Flash Drive

The slot labeled **COMPACT FLASH** on the front panel of the Services Router (see Figure 13 on page 26) is a removable compact flash drive that accepts a type I or II compact flash disk, as defined in the *CompactFlash Specification* published by the CompactFlash Association. When the removable compact flash disk is installed and configured, it automatically acts as the secondary boot device if the primary compact flash drive fails on startup.

Depending on the capacity of the removable compact flash disk, you can also configure it to receive any core files generated during a failure. For information about configuring a removable compact flash disk, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

The **IN USE** LED indicates that the removable compact flash is being accessed. Table 11 on page 28 describes the meaning of the LED states.

**Table 11: IN USE LED**

Color	State	Description
Red	On steadily	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Router has booted from the removable compact flash drive.</li> <li>request system snapshot operation has been executed, and files are being copied to or from the removable compact flash drive.</li> <li>Core dump of the kernel is being written to the removable compact flash drive.</li> <li>savecore process is retrieving core dump information.</li> </ul>



## J4300 and J6300 Physical Interface Modules (PIMs)

Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) provide the physical connection to various network media types. For more information, see “Field-Replaceable PIMs” on page 47.

For pinouts of PIM cable connectors, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175. For PIM replacement instructions, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

## J4300 Power System

The J4300 Services Router uses either AC or DC power. The autosensing power supply (see Figure 8 on page 22 or Figure 9 on page 22) distributes the different output voltages to the router components according to their voltage requirements.

The power supply is fixed in the chassis, and is not field-replaceable. An AC power supply has a single AC appliance inlet that requires a dedicated AC power feed. The DC power supply has a terminal block that provides a single DC input (–48 VDC and return) that requires a dedicated 15 A (–48 VDC) circuit breaker.

For information about site power preparations, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 83. For information about connecting the router to power and ground, see “Connecting Power” on page 96.

## J6300 Power System

The J6300 Services Router uses either AC or DC power. You can install one or two autosensing, load-sharing power supplies at the bottom rear of the chassis, as shown in Figure 10 on page 22 or Figure 11 on page 23. The power supplies distribute the different output voltages to the router components, depending on their voltage requirements. When the power supplies are installed and operational, they automatically share the electrical load.

For full redundancy, two power supplies are required. If a power supply stops functioning for any reason, the second power supply instantly begins providing all the power the router needs for normal functioning. It can provide full power indefinitely.

Each power supply has an LED located on the power supply faceplate. Table 12 on page 29 describes the J6300 power supply LED.

**Table 12: J6300 Power Supply LED**

State	Description
Off	No power flowing to the power supply.
Green	Power supply is working correctly.
Red	Power supply is starting up, or has failed.

For information about site power preparations, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 83. For information about connecting the router to power and ground, see “Connecting Power” on page 96.

Redundant power supplies on the J6300 are hot-removable and hot-insertable; you can remove and replace a redundant power supply without powering down the router or disrupting the routing functions. To avoid electrical injury, carefully follow the instructions in “Replacing Power System Components” on page 158.



**WARNING:** DC-powered Services Routers are intended for installation only in a restricted access location.

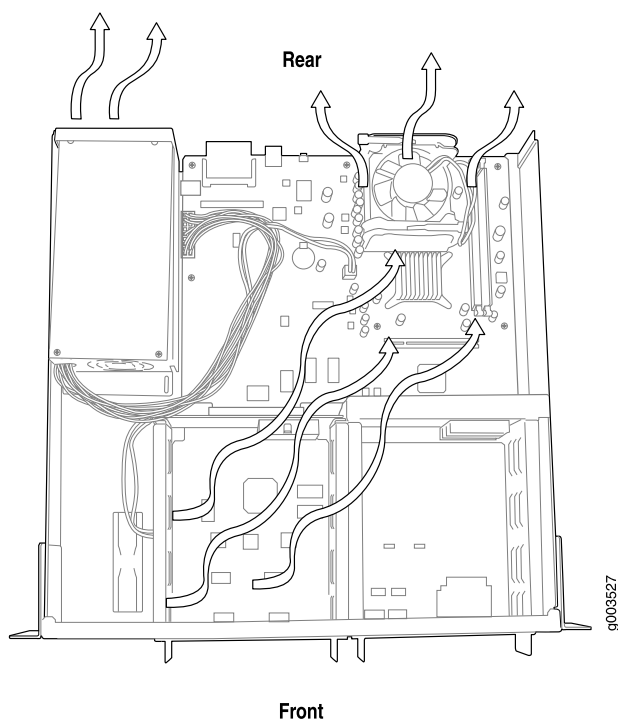
## J4300 and J6300 Cooling System

The cooling system includes a fan on the rear of the Routing Engine's processor and a fan at the front of the chassis.

The airflow produced by these fans keeps router components within the acceptable temperature range (see Figure 14 on page 30). The speed of the fan at the rear of the processor is adjusted automatically according to current temperature.

An additional fan is part of each power supply. This fan is not regulated by the operating system.

**Figure 14: Airflow Through the J4300 and J6300 Chassis**



The Routing Engine monitors the temperature of the router components. If the ambient maximum temperature specification is exceeded and the router cannot be adequately cooled, the Routing Engine shuts down the hardware components.

## Software Overview

---

Each J-series Services Router runs the JUNOS Internet software on its general-purpose processors. Designed for the large production networks typically supported by Internet service providers (ISPs), the JUNOS software includes processes for Internet Protocol (IP) routing and for managing interfaces, networks, and the router chassis.

The JUNOS Internet software runs on the Routing Engine. The Routing Engine kernel coordinates communication among the JUNOS software processes and provides a link to the Packet Forwarding Engine.

With the J-Web interface and the command-line interface (CLI) to the JUNOS software, you configure the routing protocols that run on the Services Router and set the properties of its network interfaces. After activating a software configuration, use either user interface to monitor the protocol traffic passing through the router, manage operations, and diagnose protocol and network connectivity problems.

This section contains the following topics:

- Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine on page 31
- Kernel and Microkernel on page 31
- JUNOS Software Processes on page 32
- User Interfaces on page 33

### ***Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine***

A Services Router has two primary software processing components:

- Routing Engine—Creates and maintains the routing tables that determine how packets are routed through the network.
- Packet Forwarding Engine—Processes packets; applies filters, routing policies, and other features; and forwards packets to the next hop along the route to their final destination.

For information about Routing Engine hardware, see “J2300 Routing Engine” on page 14 or “J4300 and J6300 Routing Engine” on page 25.

### ***Kernel and Microkernel***

The Routing Engine kernel provides the underlying infrastructure for all JUNOS software processes by doing the following:

- Linking the routing tables maintained by the routing protocol process with the forwarding table maintained by the Routing Engine

- Coordinating communication with the Packet Forwarding Engine, primarily by synchronizing the Packet Forwarding Engine's forwarding table with the master forwarding table maintained by the Routing Engine

The microkernel contains device drivers and processes that the Packet Forwarding Engine uses to govern the flow of packets through the Services Router.

## JUNOS Software Processes

The JUNOS software running on the Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine consists of multiple processes that are responsible for individual Services Router functions.

The separation of functions provides operational stability, because each process accesses its own protected memory space. In addition, because each process is a separate software package, you can selectively upgrade all or part of the JUNOS software, for added flexibility.

Table 13 on page 32 describes the primary JUNOS software processes.

**Table 13: JUNOS Software Processes**

Process	Name	Description
Management process	mgd	<p>Manages the Services Router system as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Provides communication between the other processes and an interface to the configuration database</li> <li>■ Populates the configuration database with configuration information and retrieves the information when queried by other processes to ensure that the system operates as configured</li> <li>■ Interacts with the other processes when commands are issued through one of the user interfaces on the router</li> </ul>
Chassis process	chassisd	<p>Controls a Services Router chassis and its components as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Detects hardware on the system that is used to configure network interfaces</li> <li>■ Monitors the physical status of hardware components and field-replaceable units (FRUs), detecting when environment sensors such as temperature sensors are triggered</li> <li>■ Relays signals and interrupts—for example, when devices are taken offline, so that the system can close sessions and shut down gracefully</li> </ul>
Routing protocol process	rpd	<p>Defines how routing protocols such as RIP, OSPF, and BGP operate on the router, including selecting routes and maintaining forwarding tables.</p>
Interface process (also called device control process)	dcd	<p>Supplies the programs that configure and monitor network interfaces by defining physical characteristics such as link encapsulation, hold times, and keepalive timers.</p>

**Table 13: JUNOS Software Processes** (*continued*)

Process	Name	Description
Forwarding process	fwdd	Responsible for most of the packet transmission through a Services Router. The overall performance of the router is largely determined by the effectiveness of the forwarding process.

## User Interfaces

The user interfaces on a Services Router interact with the management process to execute commands and store and retrieve information from the configuration database. The user interfaces operate as clients that communicate with the JUNOS Internet software through an application programming interface (API).

The following primary user interfaces are shipped with the router:

- J-Web graphical user interface—Includes quick configuration capabilities for performing the minimum required steps to enable a feature, plus a built-in configuration editor with access to the entire configuration hierarchy to fully configure the router. The J-Web interface also provides tools for monitoring, managing, and diagnosing router operation.
- Command-line interface (CLI)—Grants access to the complete JUNOS command and configuration hierarchies, to monitor the router, diagnose problems, and configure it completely.

For more information, see “Services Router User Interface Overview” on page 61.

Other user interfaces for the Services Router interact with the management process through the common API interface. These interfaces are designed to facilitate the configuration of one or, in some cases, many routers on the network. Among the supported interfaces are the JUNOScope and Session and Resource Control (SRC) applications. For more information about these products, see the *JUNOScope Software User Guide* and the *SRC-PE Getting Started Guide*.



## Chapter 3

# Physical Interface Modules Overview

J-series Services Routers accept Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) in the slots on the front of the chassis.



**CAUTION:** PIMs are not hot-swappable. You must power off the Services Router before removing or inserting a PIM. Ensure that the PIMs are installed in the router chassis before booting up the system.

A Physical Interface Module (PIM) is a network interface card that is installed on a J-series Services Router, to provide physical connections to a LAN or a WAN. The PIM receives incoming packets from the network and transmits outgoing packets to the network. Each PIM is equipped with a dedicated network processor that forwards incoming data packets to the Routing Engine, and receives outgoing data packets from the Routing Engine. During this process, the PIM performs framing and line-speed signaling for its medium type.

For a complete list of supported PIMs, see “Field-Replaceable PIMs” on page 47.

For a J-series Services Router PIM compatibility matrix and datasheets, go to <http://www.juniper.net/products/jservice/>.

For information about network interfaces, and for configuration instructions, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

This chapter contains the following topics.

- PIM Terms on page 35
- J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs on page 38
- Field-Replaceable PIMs on page 47

## PIM Terms

To understand PIMs, become familiar with the terms defined in Table 14 on page 36.

**Table 14: PIM Terms**

Term	Definition
<b>ADSL 2/2 + Annex A</b>	ITU-T Standard G.992.1 that defines how ADSL works over plain old telephone service (POTS) lines.
<b>ADSL 2/2 + Annex B</b>	ITU-T Standard G.992.1 that defines how ADSL works over Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) lines.
<b>bandwidth on demand</b>	ISDN cost-control feature defining the bandwidth threshold that must be reached on all links before a Services Router initiates additional ISDN data connections to provide more bandwidth.
<b>Basic Rate Interface (BRI)</b>	ISDN interface intended for home and small enterprise applications. BRI consists of two 64-Kbps B-channels and one 16-Kbps D-channel.
<b>callback</b>	Alternative feature to dial-in that enables a J-series Services Router to call back the caller from the remote end of a backup ISDN connection. Instead of accepting a call from the remote end of the connection, the router rejects the call, waits a configured period of time, and calls a number configured on the router's dialer interface. See also <i>dial-in</i> .
<b>caller ID</b>	Telephone number of the caller on the remote end of a backup ISDN connection, used to dial in and also to identify the caller. Multiple caller IDs can be configured on an ISDN dialer interface. During dial-in, the router matches the incoming call's caller ID against the caller IDs configured on its dialer interfaces. Each dialer interface accepts calls from only callers whose caller IDs are configured on it.
<b>channel service unit (CSU)</b>	Unit that connects a digital telephone line to a multiplexer or other signal service.
<b>data service unit (DSU)</b>	Unit that connects a data terminal equipment (DTE) device—in this case, a Services Router—to a digital telephone line.
<b>data terminal equipment-to-data communication equipment (DTE-DCE) interface</b>	Interface that a Services Router (the DTE) uses to exchange information with a serial device such as a modem (the DCE).  A DTE cable uses a male 9-pin or 25-pin connector, and a DCE cable uses a female 9-pin or 25-pin connector.
<b>demand circuit</b>	Interface configured for dial-on-demand routing backup. In OSPF, the demand circuit reduces the amount of OSPF traffic by removing all OSPF protocols when the routing domain is in a steady state.
<b>dial backup</b>	Feature that reestablishes network connectivity through one or more backup ISDN dialer interfaces after a primary interface fails. When the primary interface is reestablished, the ISDN interface is disconnected.
<b>dial-in</b>	Feature that enables J-series Services Routers to receive calls from the remote end of a backup ISDN connection. The remote end of the ISDN call might be a service provider, a corporate central location, or a customer premises equipment (CPE) branch office. All incoming calls can be verified against caller IDs configured on the router's dialer interface. See also <i>callback</i> .



**Table 14: PIM Terms** (continued)

Term	Definition
<b>dialer filter</b>	Stateless firewall filter that enables dial-on-demand routing backup when applied to a physical ISDN interface and its dialer interface configured as a passive static route. The passive static route has a lower priority than dynamic routes. If all dynamic routes to an address are lost from the routing table and the router receives a packet for that address, the dialer interface initiates an ISDN backup connection and sends the packet over it. See also <i>dial-on-demand routing backup</i> ; <i>floating static route</i> .
<b>dial-on-demand-routing (DDR) backup</b>	Feature that provides a J-series Services Router with full-time connectivity across an ISDN line. When routes on a primary serial T1, E1, T3, E3, Fast Ethernet, or PPPoE interface are lost, an ISDN dialer interface establishes a backup connection. To save connection time costs, the Services Router drops the ISDN connection after a configured period of inactivity. Services Router with ISDN interfaces support two types of dial-on-demand routing backup: on-demand routing with a dialer filter and dialer watch. See also <i>dialer filter</i> ; <i>dialer watch</i> .
<b>dialer watch</b>	Dial-on-demand routing (DDR) backup feature that provides reliable connectivity without relying on a dialer filter to activate the ISDN interface. The ISDN dialer interface monitors the existence of each route on a watch list. If all routes on the watch list are lost from the routing table, dialer watch initiates the ISDN interface for failover connectivity. See also <i>dial-on-demand routing backup</i> .
<b>“dying gasp” notification</b>	Ability of a Services Router with a digital subscriber line (DSL) connection that has lost power to send a message informing the attached DSL access multiplexer (DSLAM) that it is about to go offline.
<b>floating static route</b>	Route with an administrative distance greater than the administrative distance of the dynamically learned versions of the same route. The static route is used only when the dynamic routes are no longer available. When a floating static route is configured on an interface with a dialer filter, the interface can be used for backup.
<b>ISDN S/T interface</b>	Interface between an ISDN network and a network termination device consisting of two twisted pairs, one each for transmitting and receiving. The S/T interface usually resides in the customer premises and operates at 192 Kbps, of which ISDN traffic accounts for 144 Kbps.
<b>ISDN U interface</b>	Single twisted-pair interface line connecting the customer premises unit in an ISDN network to the central office. A U interface runs at 144 Kbps (128 Kbps for two B channels and 16 Kbps for the D channel).
<b>plain old telephone service (POTS)</b>	Standard telephone service that allows limited speed and bandwidth of 52 Kbps, which is also known as public switched telephone network (PSTN).
<b>Primary Rate Interface (PRI)</b>	ISDN service intended for higher-bandwidth applications than ISDN BRI. ISDN PRI consists of a single D-channel for control and signaling, plus a number of 64-Kbps B-channels—either 23 B-channels on a T1 line or 30 B-channels on an E1 line—to carry network traffic.
<b>uPIM</b>	Universal switching PIM. A particular type of PIM, such as the Gigabit Ethernet uPIM, which can be universally inserted in any slot on a J4350 or J6350 Services Router.

## J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs

The PIMs in J2300 Services Routers are fixed and not interchangeable. All J2300 chassis types have two Fast Ethernet LAN ports and one set of WAN ports. The J2300 Services Routers provide the chassis types summarized in Table 15 on page 38 and described in the following sections:

- J2300 Chassis PIM Summary on page 38
- Dual-Port Serial Chassis on page 39
- Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI Chassis on page 40
- Dual-Port T1 or E1 Chassis on page 41
- Dual-Port T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI Chassis on page 43
- Dual-Port G.SHDSL Chassis on page 44
- Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis on page 45

### J2300 Chassis PIM Summary

Table 15 on page 38 provides software release information, port numbers, and sample interface names for J2300 Services Router chassis types.

**Table 15: J2300 Chassis PIM Summary**

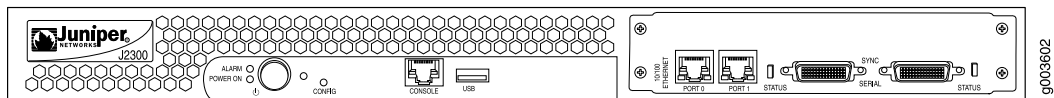
Chassis Type	Software Release	Port Numbering	Sample Interface Names (type-pim/0/port)
Dual-Port Serial	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for serial interfaces	se-0/0/2
Dual-Port Serial with one ISDN BRI port	JUNOS 7.3 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for serial interfaces	se-0/0/2
		Port—4 for the ISDN BRI interface	br-0/0/4
Dual-Port T1 or E1	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for T1 or E1 interfaces	t1-0/0/2 e1-0/0/2

**Table 15: J2300 Chassis PIM Summary** (continued)

Chassis Type	Software Release	Port Numbering	Sample Interface Names (type-pim/0/port)
Dual-Port T1 or E1 with one ISDN BRI port	JUNOS 7.3 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
			t1-0/0/2
		Ports—2 and 3 for T1 or E1 interfaces	e1-0/0/2
		Port—4 for the ISDN BRI interface	br-0/0/4
Dual-Port G.SHDSL	JUNOS 7.5 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for G.SHDSL interfaces	at-0/0/2
Dual-Port G.SHDSL with one ISDN BRI S/T port	JUNOS 7.5 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
			at-0/0/2
		Ports—2 and 3 for G.SHDSL interfaces	br-0/0/4
		Port—4 for the ISDN BRI S/T interface	

## Dual-Port Serial Chassis

The J2300 Dual-Port Serial chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports and two serial WAN ports as shown in Figure 15 on page 39.

**Figure 15: J2300 Serial Chassis**

The Dual-Port Serial chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Autoselection of operation modes based on data terminal equipment (DTE) or data communication equipment (DCE) cables
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- Configurable clock rate for the transmit (Tx) clock and receive (Rx) clock

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 16 on page 40 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, and Table 17 on page 40 describes the meaning of the status LED for a serial port.

**Table 16: LEDs for Fast Ethernet LAN Ports**

Label	Color	State	Description
LINK/SPEED	Green (100 Mbps)	On steadily	Online and link is operational.
	Yellow (10 Mbps)		
	Red	Disconnected	Link is unavailable.
ACTIVITY	Green	Blinking	Online with network traffic.
		On steadily	Online without traffic.

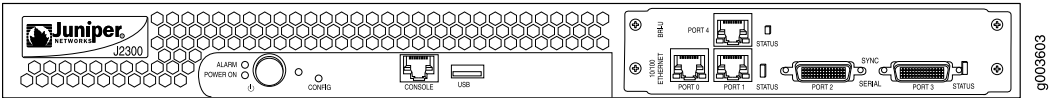
**Table 17: Status LED for Serial Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

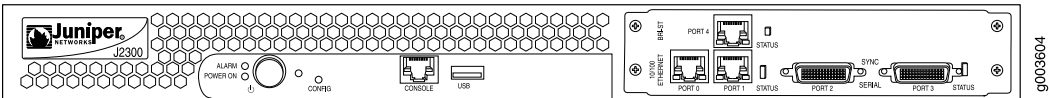
**Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI Chassis**

The J2300 Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports, two serial WAN ports, and one ISDN BRI U (Figure 16 on page 40) or S/T (Figure 17 on page 40) port. The ISDN BRI interface is the backup interface to the primary serial interface and provides failover support for a serial connection.

**Figure 16: J2300 Serial with ISDN BRI U Chassis**



**Figure 17: J2300 Serial with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis**



The serial with ISDN BRI S/T or U interface chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Autoselection of operation modes based on data terminal equipment (DTE) or data communication equipment (DCE) cables
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- Configurable clock rate for the transmit (Tx) clock and receive (Rx) clock
- Bandwidth on demand
- Dial backup
- Dial-on-demand routing backup

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 16 on page 40 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, Table 18 on page 41 describes the meaning of the status LED for a serial port, and Table 19 on page 41 describes the meaning of the status LED for an ISDN BRI port.

**Table 18: Status LED for Serial Ports**

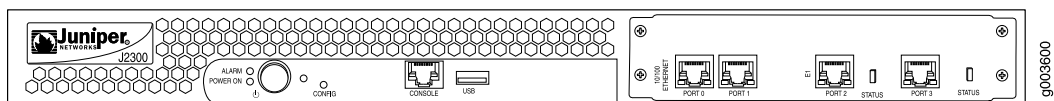
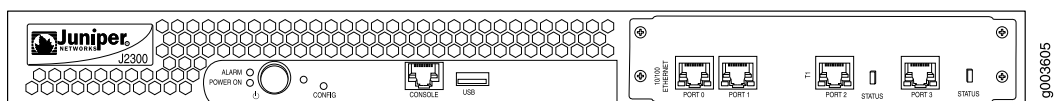
Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

**Table 19: Status LED for ISDN BRI Port**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
Red	Disconnected	PIM is not operational and needs replacement.
Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.

### **Dual-Port T1 or E1 Chassis**

The J2300 Dual-Port T1 or E1 chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports and two T1 or E1 WAN ports. Figure 18 on page 42 shows the E1 chassis, and Figure 19 on page 42 shows the T1 chassis.

**Figure 18: J2300 E1 Chassis****Figure 19: J2300 T1 Chassis**

The T1 or E1 chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Integrated CSU/DSU—Eliminates the need for a separate external device
- Framed, unframed (E1 only), and fractional operational modes
- 56-Kbps and 64-Kbps modes
- ANSI T1.102, T1.107, and T1.403 standards compliance
- G.703, G.704, and G.706 E1 standards compliance
- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Local and remote loopback, bit error rate test (BERT), T1 facilities data link (FDL), and long buildout diagnostics

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 16 on page 40 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, and Table 20 on page 42 describes the meaning of the status LED for a T1 or E1 port.

**Table 20: Status LEDs for T1 and E1 Ports**

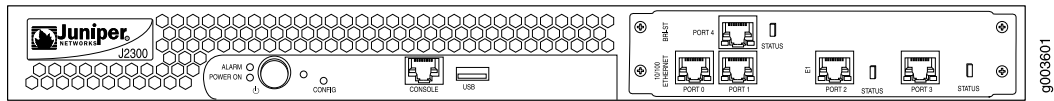
Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

## Dual-Port T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI Chassis

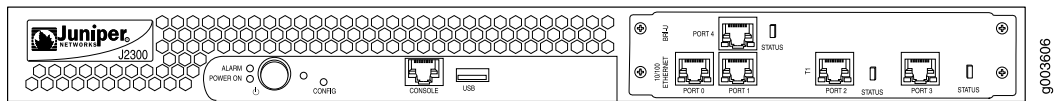
The J2300 Dual-Port T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports, two T1 or E1 WAN ports, and one ISDN BRI port. The ISDN BRI interface is the backup interface to the primary T1 or E1 interface and provides ISDN failover support for a T1 or E1 connection.

The E1 chassis has an ISDN BRI S/T port (Figure 20 on page 43), and the T1 chassis has an ISDN BRI U port (Figure 21 on page 43).

**Figure 20: J2300 E1 with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis**



**Figure 21: J2300 T1 with ISDN BRI U Chassis**



The T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Integrated CSU/DSU—Eliminates the need for a separate external device
- Framed, unframed (E1 only), and fractional operational modes
- 56-Kbps and 64-Kbps modes
- ANSI T1.102, T1.107, and T1.403 standards compliance
- G.703, G.704, and G.706 E1 standards compliance
- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Local and remote loopback, bit error rate test (BERT), T1 facilities data link (FDL), and long buildout diagnostics
- Bandwidth on demand
- Dial backup
- Dial-on-demand routing backup

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 16 on page 40 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, Table 21 on page 44 describes the meaning of the status LED for a T1 or E1 port, and Table 22 on page 44 describes the meaning of the status LED for an ISDN BRI port.

**Table 21: Status LEDs for T1 and E1 Ports**

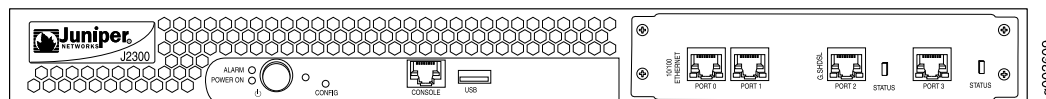
Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

**Table 22: Status LED for ISDN BRI Port**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
Red	Disconnected	PIM is not operational and needs replacement.
Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.

## Dual-Port G.SHDSL Chassis

The J2300 Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports and two G.SHDSL WAN ports, as shown in Figure 22 on page 44. The G.SHDSL ports provide symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL) interfaces to ATM network media for ATM-over-SHDSL connections.

**Figure 22: J2300 G.SHDSL Chassis**

The G.SHDSL chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- 2-port two-wire mode and 1-port four-wire mode



**NOTE:** Contact the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC) before implementing 1-port four-wire mode.

- Programmable line rates in both modes:
  - 2-port two-wire mode supports autodetection of line rate and fixed line rates from 192 Kbps to 2.304 Mbps in 64-Kbps increments.



- 1-port four-wire mode supports fixed line rates from 384 Kbps to 4.608 Mbps in 128-Kbps increments.
- Up to 16 virtual channels (VCs) per G.SHDSL port
- ATM-over-G.SHDSL framing
- “Dying gasp” notification
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- ITU-T G.991.2, ITU-T G.994.1, and ITU-T G.997.1 standards compliance

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 16 on page 40 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, and Table 23 on page 45 describes the meaning of the status LED for a G.SHDSL port.

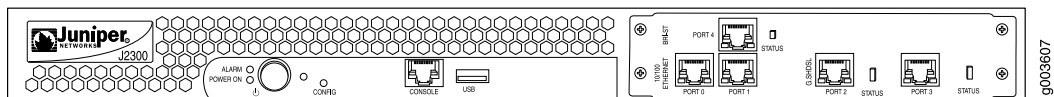
**Table 23: Status LED for G.SHDSL Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.

### Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis

The J2300 Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports, two G.SHDSL WAN ports, and one ISDN BRI S/T port as shown in Figure 23 on page 45. The G.SHDSL ports provide symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL) interfaces to ATM network media for ATM-over-SHDSL connections. The ISDN BRI S/T interface is the backup interface to the primary G.SHDSL interface and provides ISDN failover support for a G.SHDSL connection.

**Figure 23: J2300 G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis**



The G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- 2-port two-wire mode and 1-port four-wire mode



**NOTE:** Contact the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC) before implementing 1-port four-wire mode.

- Programmable line rates in both modes:
  - 2-port two-wire mode supports autodetection of line rate and fixed line rates from 192 Kbps to 2.304 Mbps in 64-Kbps increments.
  - 1-port four-wire mode supports fixed line rates from 384 Kbps to 4.608 Mbps in 128-Kbps increments.
- Up to 16 virtual channels (VCs) per G.SHDSL port
- ATM-over-G.SHDSL framing
- “Dying gasp” notification
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- ITU-T G.991.2, ITU-T G.994.1, and ITU-T G.997.1 standards compliance
- Bandwidth on demand
- Dial backup
- Dial-on-demand routing backup

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 16 on page 40 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, Table 24 on page 46 describes the meaning of the status LED for a G.SHDSL port, and Table 25 on page 46 describes the meaning of the status LED for an ISDN BRI port.

**Table 24: Status LEDs for G.SHDSL Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.

**Table 25: Status LED for ISDN BRI Port**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
Red	Disconnected	PIM is not operational and needs replacement.

**Table 25: Status LED for ISDN BRI Port** *(continued)*

Color	State	Description
Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.

## Field-Replaceable PIMs

PIMs are removable and insertable only when the Services Router is powered off. You can install a PIM into one of the six slots in the router chassis. If a slot is not occupied by a PIM, a PIM blank panel must be installed to shield the empty slot and to allow cooling air to circulate properly through the router.

These Services Routers support the types of PIMs summarized in Table 26 on page 47 and described in the following sections:

- J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIM Summary on page 47
- Dual-Port Serial PIM on page 48
- Dual-Port T1 or E1 PIM on page 49
- Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI PIM on page 51
- T3 or E3 PIM on page 53
- Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM on page 54
- 4-Port ISDN BRI PIMs on page 55
- ADSL PIM on page 56
- G.SHDSL PIM on page 58

### J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIM Summary

Table 26 on page 47 provides software release information, slot and port numbers, and sample interface names for the field-replaceable PIMs supported on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers.

**Table 26: J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIM Summary**

PIM	Software Release	Slot and Port Numbering	Sample Interface Name (type-pim/0/port)
Dual-Port Serial	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Slots—1 through 6  Ports—0 and 1	se-3/0/1

**Table 26: J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIM Summary** *(continued)*

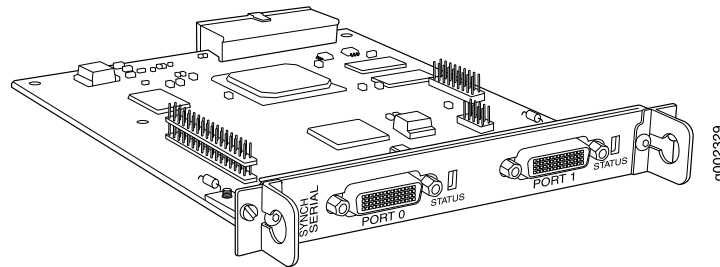
<b>PIM</b>	<b>Software Release</b>	<b>Slot and Port Numbering</b>	<b>Sample Interface Name (type-pim/0/port)</b>
Dual-Port T1 or E1	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Slots—1 through 6	t1-0/0/1
		Ports—0 and 1	or
			e1-0/0/1
Dual-Port Channelized T1 or E1	JUNOS 8.1 and later	Slots—1 through 6	ct1-3/0/0
		Port—0 and 1	ce1-3/0/0
T3 or E3	T3 PIM—JUNOS 7.0 and later	Slots—1 through 6	t3-0/0/0
	E3 PIM—JUNOS 7.3 and later	Port—0	or
			e3-2/0/0
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Slots—1 through 6	fe-1/0/0
		Ports—0 and 1	
4-Port ISDN BRI	JUNOS 7.3 and later	Slots—1 through 6	br-1/0/2
		Ports—0, 1, 2, and 3	
ADSL	ADSL Annex A and Annex B—JUNOS 7.2 and later	Slots—1 through 6	at-2/0/0
	ADSL 2/2 + Annex A—JUNOS 7.3 and later	Port—0	
	ADSL 2/2 + Annex B—JUNOS 7.4 and later		
G.SHDSL	JUNOS 7.4 and later	Slots—1 through 6	at-1/0/0
		Ports—0 and 1	



**NOTE:** PIMs are not hot-swappable. PIMs must be installed in front panel slots before the system is booted up.

### Dual-Port Serial PIM

The Dual-Port Serial PIM (Figure 24 on page 49) provides a physical connection to serial network media types through two serial interface ports.

**Figure 24: Dual-Port Serial PIM**

The Dual-Port Serial PIM provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Autoselection of operation modes based on data terminal equipment (DTE) or data communication equipment (DCE) cables
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- Configurable clock rate for the transmit (Tx) clock and receive (Rx) clock

For pinouts of cable connectors for serial PIMs, see “Serial PIM Cable Specifications” on page 175.

To install or remove a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

Status LEDs indicate port status. Table 27 on page 49 describes the meaning of the LED states.

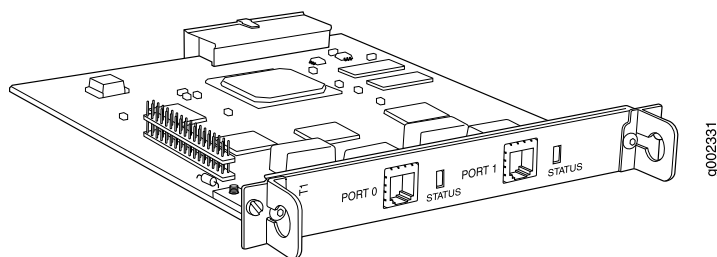
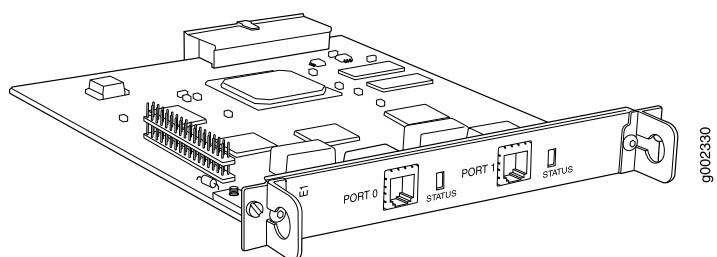
**Table 27: Status LEDs for Serial Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

### Dual-Port T1 or E1 PIM

The Dual-Port T1 PIM (Figure 25 on page 50) and Dual-Port E1 PIM (Figure 26 on page 50) provide a physical connection to T1 or E1 network media types. Each PIM has two physical T1 or E1 ports with an integrated channel service unit (CSU) or data service unit (DSU).

**Figure 25: Dual-Port T1 PIM****Figure 26: Dual-Port E1 PIM**

The Dual-Port T1 and E1 PIMs provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Integrated CSU/DSU—Eliminates the need for a separate external device
- 56-Kbps and 64-Kbps modes
- ANSI T1.102, T1.107, and T1.403 standards compliance
- G.703, G.704, and G.706 E1 standards compliance
- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Loopback, bit error rate test (BERT), T1 facilities data link (FDL), and long buildout diagnostics

For pinouts of cable connectors for T1 and E1 PIMs, see “E1 and T1 RJ-48 Cable Pinouts” on page 186.

To install or remove a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

Status LEDs indicate port status. Table 28 on page 50 describes the meaning of the LED states.

**Table 28: Status LEDs for T1 and E1 Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.

**Table 28: Status LEDs for T1 and E1 Ports (continued)**

Color	State	Description
Unlit	Off	Offline.

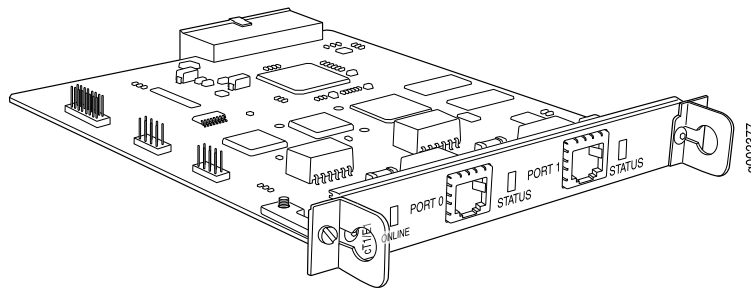
For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

### Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI PIM

The Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI PIM (Figure 27 on page 51) is a multiflex interface card that allows you to configure a single interface as a channelized T1 interface or a channelized E1 interface. You can also configure ISDN PRI services on a channelized T1 or E1 interface. The channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI interface supports up to 24 DS0 channels on a T1 interface and up to 31 DS0 channels on an E1 interface, in addition to supporting the features of regular (unchannelized) T1 and E1 PIMs. Each interface can be configured as a single clear-channel, fractionalized, or channelized interface.



**NOTE:** You cannot configure a channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI interface through a J-Web Quick Configuration page.

**Figure 27: Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI PIM**

The Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI PIM provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Two-port channelization
- Interfaces that are software configurable as T1 or E1 channels or ISDN PRI B-channels
- Clear-channel, fractional, and channelized operation
- Lower latency due to the addition of a Freescale processor
- Maximum MTU value of 4500 bytes (for channelized T1 or E1 interface) and 4098 bytes (for ISDN PRI services)



**NOTE:** For a clear-channel T1 or E1 interface, the maximum MTU is 9150 bytes.

- 56-Kbps and 64-Kbps modes
- ANSI T1.102, T1.107, and T1.403 standards compliance
- G.703, G.704, and G.706 E1 standards compliance
- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Loopback, bit error rate test (BERT), T1 facilities data link (FDL), and long buildout diagnostics

For pinouts of cable connectors for channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI PIMs, see “ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout” on page 190.

To install or remove a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI LEDs indicate PIM and port status. Table 29 on page 52 describes the meaning of the LED states.



**NOTE:** The STATUS LED displays channelized T1 or E1 port activity and alarms only. It does not display ISDN PRI B-channel or D-channel status.

**Table 29: LEDs for Channelized T1/E1/ISDN PRI PIMs**

Label	Color	State	Description
ONLINE	Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
	Unlit	Off	PIM is not online.
STATUS	Green	On steadily	Port is online with no alarms or failures, and the physical layer is active.
	Red	Online	Port is active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure and the physical layer is inactive.
	Yellow	Online	Port is online with alarms for remote failures.
	Unlit	Offline	Port is disabled.

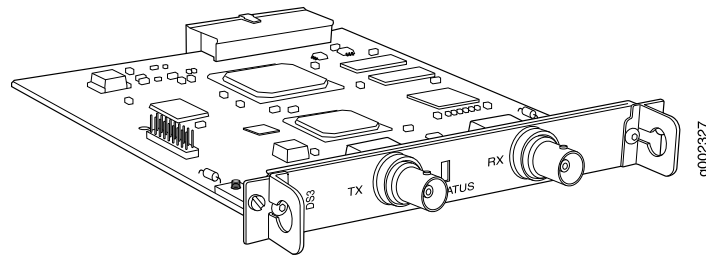


For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

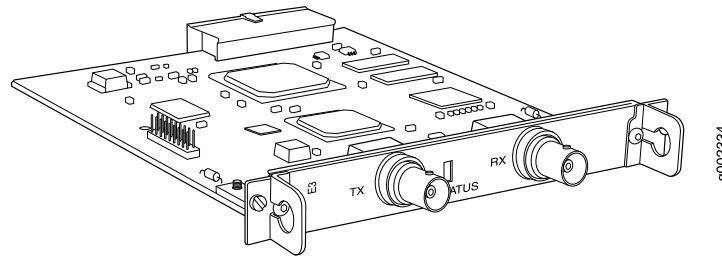
## T3 or E3 PIM

The T3 (also known as DS3) PIM (Figure 28 on page 53) and E3 PIM (Figure 29 on page 53) are supported on J6300 Services Routers and provide a physical connection to T3 or E3 network media types. The T3 and E3 PIMs include one physical T3 or E3 port with an integrated data service unit (DSU).

**Figure 28: T3 PIM**



**Figure 29: E3 PIM**



The T3 and E3 PIMs provide the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Integrated DSU—Eliminates the need for a separate external device
- Subrate and scrambling options with support for major DSU vendors
- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Loopback (payload—supported only on T3 PIM, local, and remote), bit error rate test (BERT), and T3 far-end alarm and control (FEAC) diagnostics

For pinouts of cable connectors for T3 and E3 PIMs, see “E3 and T3 BNC Connector Pinout” on page 189.

To install or remove a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

Status LEDs indicate port status. Table 30 on page 54 describes the meaning of the LED states.

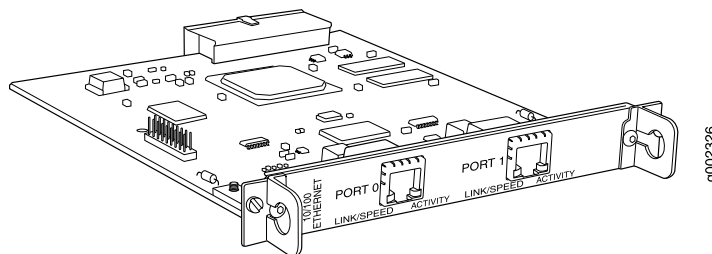
**Table 30: Status LEDs for T3 and E3 Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Yellow	On steadily	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Loopback mode.</li> <li>■ T3 (DS3)—Remote endpoint is in red alarm failure.</li> <li>■ E3—Remote defect indication (RDI).</li> </ul>
Unlit	Off	Offline.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

## Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM

The Dual-Port 10/100-Mbps Fast Ethernet PIM (Figure 30 on page 54) has two physical Fast Ethernet ports.

**Figure 30: Fast Ethernet PIM**

The Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Full-duplex and half-duplex modes
- Media access control (MAC) address filtering
- Autonegotiation through medium-dependent interface (MDI) and MDI crossover (MDI-X) support

For pinouts of cable connectors for Fast Ethernet PIMs, see “Fast Ethernet RJ-45 Connector Pinout” on page 185.

To install or remove a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

Fast Ethernet LEDs indicate link status, port speed, and activity. Table 31 on page 55 describes the meaning of the LEDs.

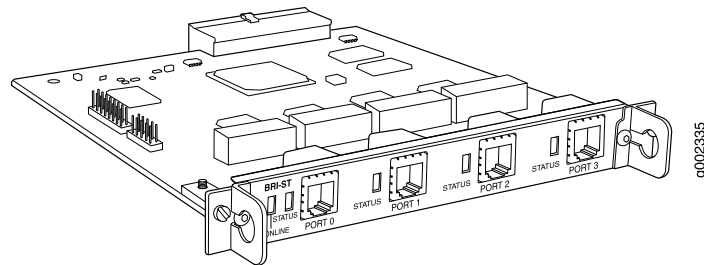
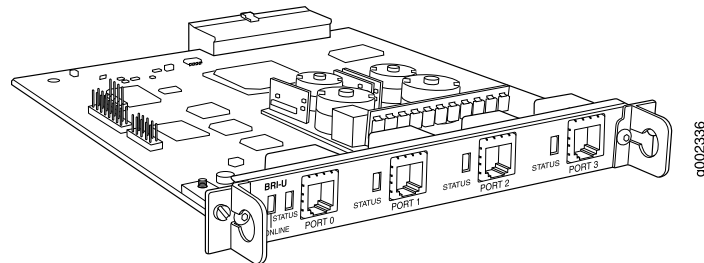
**Table 31: LEDs for Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM**

Label	Color	State	Description
LINK/SPEED	Green (100 Mbps)	On steadily	Online and link is active.
	Yellow (10 Mbps)		
	Red	Disconnected	Link is unavailable.
ACTIVITY	Green	Blinking	Online with network traffic.
	Green	On steadily	Online without traffic.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

### 4-Port ISDN BRI PIMs

The 4-port ISDN BRI PIMs have four physical ports that support the ISDN BRI S/T (Figure 31 on page 55) or ISDN BRI U (Figure 32 on page 55) interface type.

**Figure 31: ISDN BRI S/T PIM****Figure 32: ISDN BRI U PIM**

ISDN BRI PIMs provide the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Bandwidth on demand
- Dial backup
- Dial-on-demand routing backup (floating static and dialer watch)

For pinouts of cable connectors for ISDN PIMs, see “ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout” on page 190.

To install or remove a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

ISDN LEDs indicate PIM and port status. Table 32 on page 56 describes the meaning of the LED states.

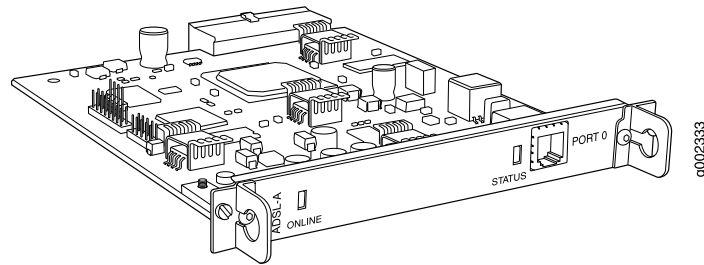
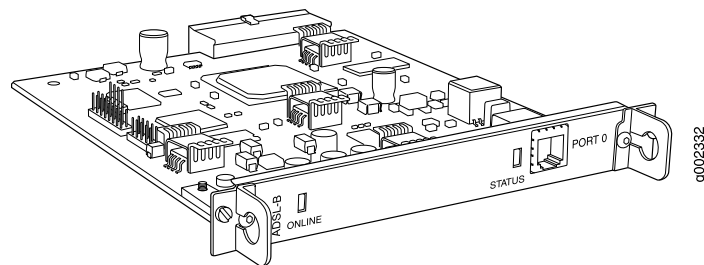
**Table 32: LEDs for ISDN BRI S/T and U PIMs**

Label	Color	State	Description
ONLINE	Green	Blinking	Call setup is successful on either the B1 or B2 channel.
	Green	On steadily	ISDN Layer 2 is active.
	Amber	On steadily	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ISDN Layer 1 is active.</li> <li>■ ISDN Layer 2 is unavailable.</li> </ul>
	Red	Disconnected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ BRI interface port is not connected.</li> <li>■ ISDN Layer 1 is unavailable.</li> </ul>
	Unlit	Off	BRI interface is offline.
STATUS	Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
	Red	Disconnected	PIM is not operational and needs replacement.
	Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

## ADSL PIM

The ADSL PIM provides a single physical interface to asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) network media types. The ADSL PIM, one supporting Annex A (Figure 33 on page 57) over plain old telephone service (POTS) and the other Annex B (Figure 34 on page 57) over ISDN, includes one physical ADSL port for an ATM-over-ADSL connection.

**Figure 33: ADSL 2/2+ Annex A PIM****Figure 34: ADSL 2/2+ Annex B PIM**

The ADSL PIM provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- ADSL, ADSL2, and ADSL2 + protocols on the same PIM
- “Dying gasp” notification
- Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5) encapsulation

For pinouts of cable connectors for ADSL PIMs, see “ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout” on page 189.

To install or remove a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

The ADSL PIMs have two LEDs to indicate the status of the PIM and its port. Table 33 on page 57 describes the meaning of the LED states.

**Table 33: LEDs for ADSL PIMs**

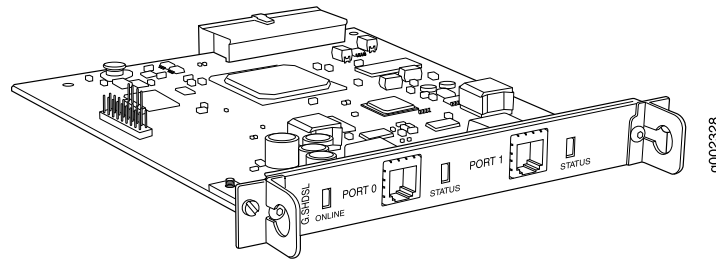
Label	Color	State	Description
ONLINE	Green	On steadily	PIM passed the self-test and is online and operational.
	Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.
STATUS	Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
	Red	On steadily	Active with local or remote alarms. The router has detected a failure.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

## G.SHDSL PIM

The G.SHDSL PIM (Figure 35 on page 58) provides symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL) physical interfaces to ATM network media types. The G.SHDSL PIM has two ports for ATM-over-SHDSL connections.

**Figure 35: G.SHDSL PIM**



The G.SHDSL PIM supports the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- 2-port two-wire mode and 1-port four-wire mode
- Programmable line rates in both modes:
  - 2-port two-wire mode supports autodetection of line rate and fixed line rates from 192 Kbps to 2.304 Mbps in 64-Kbps increments.
  - 1-port four-wire mode supports fixed line rates from 384 Kbps to 4.608 Mbps in 128-Kbps increments.
- 32 virtual channels per PIM
- ATM-over-G.SHDSL framing
- “Dying gasp” notification
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- ITU-T G.991.2, ITU-T G.994.1, and ITU-T G.997.1 standards compliance



**NOTE:** Payload loopback functionality is not supported on ATM-over-SHDSL interfaces.

For pinouts of cable connectors for G.SHDSL PIMs, see “ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout” on page 189.

To install or remove a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.

The G.SHDSL PIM has two LEDs to indicate the status of the PIM and its ports. Table 34 on page 59 describes the meaning of the LED states.

**Table 34: LEDs for G.SHDSL PIMs**

Label	Color	State	Description
ONLINE	Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
	Red	Disconnected	Initialization of the PIM has failed.
	Unlit	Off	PIM is booting.
STATUS	Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
	Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.





## Chapter 4

# Services Router User Interface Overview

You can use two user interfaces to monitor, configure, troubleshoot, and manage a Services Router—the J-Web interface and the JUNOS command-line interface (CLI). This chapter contains the following topics:

- User Interface Overview on page 61
- Before You Begin on page 64
- Using the J-Web Interface on page 64
- Using the Command-Line Interface on page 68

## User Interface Overview

---

This section contains the following topics:

- J-Web Overview on page 61
- CLI Overview on page 62
- Comparison of Configuration Interfaces on page 62

### J-Web Overview

The J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) allows you to monitor, configure, troubleshoot, and manage the Services Router by means of a Web browser with Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or HTTP over Secure Sockets Layer (HTTPS) enabled. The J-Web interface provides access to all the configuration statements supported by the router, so you can fully configure it without using the CLI.

The J-Web interface provides two methods of Services Router configuration:

- Quick Configuration
- Configuration editor

For more information, see “Comparison of Configuration Interfaces” on page 62.

In addition to configuration, you can use the J-Web interface to perform many monitoring, troubleshooting, and management tasks on the Services Router. For example, to display a summary of routing table entries, click **Monitor** in the task

bar, then click **Routing > Route Information** in the side pane. The routes are displayed in the main pane.

For more information about the J-Web interface, see “Using the J-Web Interface” on page 64.

## **CLI Overview**

The CLI is a straightforward command interface in which you type commands on a line and press Enter to execute them. The CLI provides command help, command completion, and Emacs-style keyboard sequences for moving around on the command line and scrolling through a buffer of recently executed commands.

The CLI has two modes:

- Operational mode—Complete set of commands to control the CLI environment, monitor and troubleshoot network connectivity, manage the Services Router, and enter configuration mode.
- Configuration mode—Complete set of commands to configure the Services Router. This guide refers to configuration mode as the *CLI configuration editor*. For more information, see “Comparison of Configuration Interfaces” on page 62.

For more information about the CLI, see “Using the Command-Line Interface” on page 68.

## **Comparison of Configuration Interfaces**

Table 35 on page 63 describes and compares the interfaces you can use to configure a Services Router.

**Table 35: Services Router Configuration Interfaces**

Interface	Description	Capabilities	Recommendations
J-Web Quick Configuration	<p>Web browser pages for setting up the Services Router quickly and easily without configuring each statement individually.</p> <p>For example, use the Set Up Quick Configuration page to configure the Services Router for basic connectivity so you can manage it from the network.</p>	<p>Configure basic router services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Setup</li> <li>■ Secure access</li> <li>■ Interfaces</li> <li>■ User access</li> <li>■ SNMP notifications</li> <li>■ Routing and protocols, including data link switching (DLSw)</li> <li>■ Class of service (CoS)</li> <li>■ Security firewall filters and Network Address Translation (NAT)</li> <li>■ Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) services</li> <li>■ IPSec tunnels</li> <li>■ Real-time performance monitoring</li> <li>■ Input and output firewall filters (ACLs)</li> </ul>	Use for basic configuration.
J-Web configuration editor	<p>Web browser pages divided into panes in which you can do any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Expand the entire configuration hierarchy and click a configuration statement to view or edit. The main pane displays all the options for the statement, with a text box for each option.</li> <li>■ Paste a complete configuration hierarchy into a scrollable text box, or edit individual lines.</li> <li>■ Upload or download a complete configuration.</li> <li>■ Roll back to a previous configuration.</li> <li>■ Create or delete a rescue configuration.</li> </ul>	<p>Configure all router services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ System parameters</li> <li>■ User access and accounting</li> <li>■ Interfaces</li> <li>■ SNMP network management</li> <li>■ Routing options, including multicast routing</li> <li>■ Routing protocols</li> <li>■ Routing policies</li> <li>■ Secure access</li> <li>■ Service interfaces, including stateful firewalls and virtual private networks (VPNs)</li> <li>■ Traffic engineering, including Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) and class-of-service (CoS) packet prioritization</li> <li>■ Chassis properties</li> </ul>	Use for complete configuration if you are not familiar with the JUNOS CLI or prefer a graphical interface.
CLI configuration editor	<p>Interface in which you do either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Type commands on a line and press Enter to create a hierarchy of configuration statements.</li> <li>■ Create an ASCII text file that contains the statement hierarchy.</li> <li>■ Upload a complete configuration, or roll back to a previous configuration.</li> <li>■ Create or delete a rescue configuration.</li> </ul>		Use for complete configuration if you know the JUNOS CLI or prefer a command interface.

## Before You Begin

---

Before you start the user interface, you must perform the initial Services Router configuration described in “Establishing Basic Connectivity” on page 103. After the initial configuration, you use your username and password, and the hostname or IP address of the router, to start the user interface.

## Using the J-Web Interface

---

This section contains the following topics:

- Starting the J-Web Interface on page 64
- J-Web Layout on page 65
- J-Web Sessions on page 67

### Starting the J-Web Interface

To start the J-Web interface:

1. Launch your HTTP-enabled or HTTPS-enabled Web browser.

To use HTTPS, you must have installed a certificate on the Services Router and enabled HTTPS.



**NOTE:** If the Services Router is running the worldwide version of the JUNOS Internet software and you are using the Microsoft Internet Explorer Web browser, you must disable the **Use SSL 3.0** option in the Web browser to access the Services Router.

---

2. After **http://** or **https://** in your Web browser, type the hostname or IP address of the Services Router and press Enter.

The J-Web login page appears.

3. On the login page, type your username and password, and click **Log In**.

To correct or change the username or password you typed, click **Reset**, type the new entry or entries, and click **Log In**.



**NOTE:** The default username is **root** with no password. You must change this during initial configuration or the system does not accept the configuration.

---

The J-Web **Quick Configuration > Set Up** (see Figure 36 on page 65) or **Monitor > System** page appears.

To explicitly terminate a J-Web session at any time, click **Logout** in the top pane.

## J-Web Layout

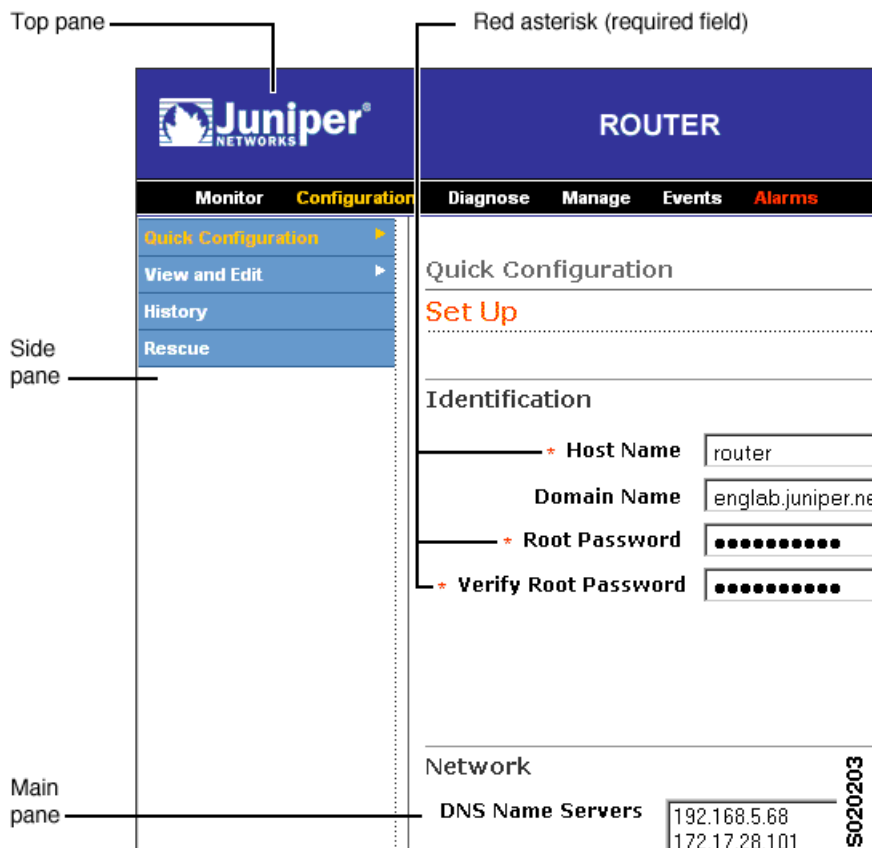
Each page of the J-Web interface is divided into the following panes shown in Figure 36 on page 65 and Figure 37 on page 66:

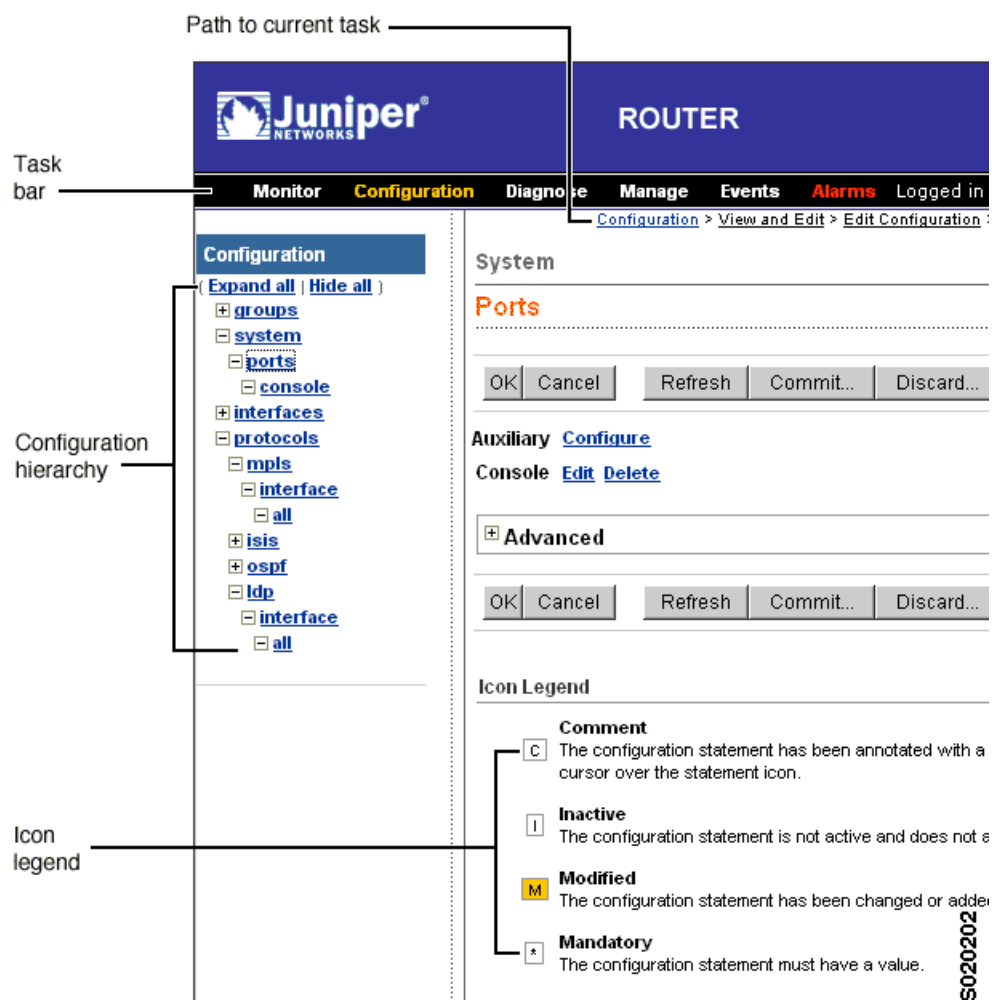
- Top pane—Displays identifying information and links.
- Main pane—Location where you monitor, configure, diagnose, and manage the Services Router by entering information in text boxes, making selections, and clicking buttons.
- Side pane—Displays suboptions of the Monitor, Configuration, Diagnose, or Manage task currently displayed in the main pane. Click a suboption to access it in the main pane.
- Bottom pane—Displays copyright and trademark information.

The layout of the panes allows you to quickly navigate through the interface. Table 36 on page 66 summarizes the elements of the J-Web interface.

You navigate the J-Web interface, move forward and backward, scroll pages, and expand and collapse elements as you do in a typical Web browser interface.

**Figure 36: J-Web Layout**



**Figure 37: J-Web Layout—Configuration Editor****Table 36: Summary of J-Web Elements**

J-Web Interface Element	Description
<b>Top Pane</b>	
Juniper Networks logo	Link to <a href="http://www.juniper.net">http://www.juniper.net</a> in a new browser window.
<i>hostname – model</i>	Hostname and model of the Services Router.
Logged in as: <i>username</i>	Username you used to log in to the Services Router.
Help	Link to context-sensitive help information.
About	Displays information about the J-Web interface, such as the version number.
Logout	Ends your current login session with the Services Router and returns you to the login page.

**Table 36: Summary of J-Web Elements** *(continued)*

J-Web Interface Element	Description
Task bar	<p>Menu of J-Web main options. Click to access.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Monitor</b>—View information about configuration and hardware on the Services Router.</li> <li>■ <b>Configuration</b>—Configure the Services Router with Quick Configuration or the configuration editor, and view configuration history.</li> <li>■ <b>Diagnose</b>—Troubleshoot network connectivity problems.</li> <li>■ <b>Manage</b>—Manage files and licenses, upgrade software, and reboot the Services Router.</li> <li>■ <b>Events</b>—View events and set up filters for an event summary.</li> <li>■ <b>Alarms</b>—View the alarm summary.</li> </ul>
<b>Main Pane</b>	
Help (?) icon	Displays useful information—such as the definition, format, and valid range of an option—when you move the cursor over the question mark.
Red asterisk (*)	Indicates a required field.
Path to current task	Path of main options and suboptions you selected to display the current main and side panes.
Icon Legend	<p>(Applies to the configuration editor only) Explains icons that appear in the user interface to provide information about configuration statements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ C—Comment. Move your cursor over the icon to view a comment about the configuration statement.</li> <li>■ I—Inactive. The configuration statement does not affect the Services Router.</li> <li>■ M—Modified. The configuration statement is added or modified.</li> <li>■ *—Mandatory. The configuration statement must have a value.</li> </ul>
<b>Side Pane</b>	
Configuration hierarchy	<p>(Applies to the configuration editor only) Displays the hierarchy of committed statements in the Services Router configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Click <b>Expand all</b> to display the entire hierarchy.</li> <li>■ Click <b>Hide all</b> to display only the statements at the top level.</li> <li>■ Click plus signs (+) to expand individual items.</li> <li>■ Click minus signs (-) to hide individual items.</li> </ul>

## J-Web Sessions

You establish a J-Web session with the Services Router through an HTTP-enabled or HTTPS-enabled Web browser. The HTTPS protocol, which uses 128-bit encryption, is available only in domestic versions of the JUNOS software. To use HTTPS, you must have installed a certificate on the Services Router and enabled HTTPS.

When you attempt to log in through the J-Web interface, the Services Router authenticates your username with the same methods used for Telnet and SSH.

The Services Router can support multiple J-Web sessions for a single user who logs in to each session. However, if a single user attempts to launch multiple J-Web

*windows*—for example, by right-clicking a link to launch another instance of a Web browser—the session can have unpredictable results.

If the Services Router does not detect any activity through the J-Web interface for 15 minutes, the session times out and is terminated. You must log in again to begin a new session.

To explicitly terminate a J-Web session at any time, click **Logout** in the top pane.

## Using the Command-Line Interface

This section contains the following topics:

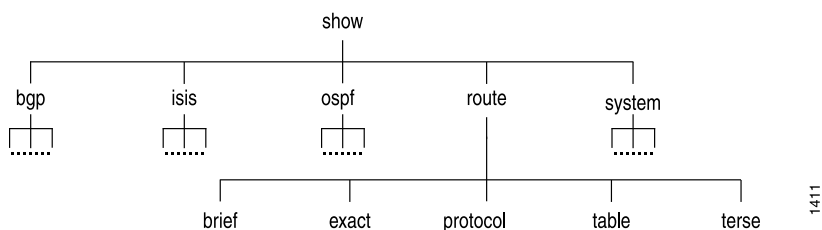
- CLI Command Hierarchy on page 68
- Starting the CLI on page 69
- CLI Operational Mode on page 69
- CLI Configuration Mode on page 70
- CLI Basics on page 71

For more information about the CLI, see the *JUNOS CLI User Guide*.

### CLI Command Hierarchy

The CLI commands are organized hierarchically, with commands that perform a similar function grouped together under the same level. For example, all commands that display information about the Services Router system and system software are grouped under the **show** command, and all commands that display information about the routing table are grouped under the **show route** command. Figure 38 on page 68 illustrates a portion of the **show** command hierarchy.

**Figure 38: CLI Command Hierarchy Example**



To execute a command, you enter the full command name, starting at the top level of the hierarchy. For example, to display a brief view of the routes in the routing table, use the command **show route brief**.

The hierarchical organization results in commands that have a regular syntax and provides the following features that simplify CLI use:

- Consistent command names—Commands that provide the same type of function have the same name, regardless of the portion of the software they are operating



on. For example, all **show** commands display software information and statistics, and all **clear** commands erase various types of system information.

- Lists and short descriptions of available commands—Information about available commands is provided at each level of the CLI command hierarchy. If you type a question mark (?) at any level, you see a list of the available commands along with a short description of each command.
- Command completion—Command completion for command names (keywords) and command options is also available at each level of the hierarchy. If you type a partial command name followed immediately by a question mark (with no intervening space), you see a list of commands that match the partial name you typed.

## Starting the CLI

To start the CLI:

1. Establish a connection with the Services Router:
  - To access the router remotely from the network, enter the command you typically use to establish a remote connection (such as **Telnet** or **ssh**) using the router hostname.
  - To access the router through a management device attached to the console port, start the terminal application.
  - To access the router through the J-Web interface, select **Diagnose > CLI Terminal** in the J-Web interface. For more information, see the *J-Web Interface User Guide*.

2. Log in using your username and password.

After you log in, you enter a UNIX shell.

3. Start the CLI.

```
% cli
user@host>
```

The presence of the angle bracket (>) prompt indicates the CLI has started. By default, the prompt is preceded by a string that contains your username and the hostname of the routing platform.

To exit the CLI and return to the UNIX shell, enter the **quit** command.

## CLI Operational Mode

The CLI has two modes: *operational* and *configuration*. When you log in to the Services Router and the CLI starts, you are at the top level of operational mode.

To view a list of top-level operational mode commands, type a question mark (?) at the command-line prompt.

```

user@host> ?
Possible completions:
clear          Clear information in the system
configure      Manipulate software configuration information
file           Perform file operations
help           Provide help information
monitor        Show real-time debugging information
mtrace         Trace multicast path from source to receiver
ping           Ping remote target
quit           Exit the management session
request        Make system-level requests
restart        Restart software process
set            Set CLI properties, date/time, craft interface message
show           Show system information
ssh            Start secure shell on another host
start          Start shell
telnet         Telnet to another host
test           Perform diagnostic debugging
traceroute     Trace route to remote host

```

At the top level of operational mode are a number of broad groups of CLI commands that are used to perform the following functions:

- Control the CLI environment.
- Monitor and troubleshoot the router.
- Connect to other systems.
- Manage files and software images.
- Control software processes.
- Stop and reboot the router.
- Enter configuration mode.

To control the CLI environment, see “Configuring the CLI Environment” on page 74. To enter configuration mode, see “CLI Configuration Mode” on page 70. For information about the other CLI operational mode functions, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

## CLI Configuration Mode

To configure the Services Router, including system parameters, routing protocols, interfaces, network management, and user access, you must enter configuration mode. In configuration mode, the CLI provides commands to configure the router, load a text (ASCII) file that contains the router configuration, activate a configuration, and save the configuration to a text file.

You enter configuration mode by entering the **configure** operational mode command. The CLI prompt changes from **user@host>** to **user@host#**.

To view a list of configuration mode commands, type a question mark (?) at the command-line prompt. (You do not need to press Enter after typing the question mark.)

```

user@host# ?
Possible completions:
  Enter          Execute this command
  activate       Remove the inactive tag from a statement
  annotate       Annotate the statement with a comment
  commit        Commit current set of changes
  copy          Copy a statement
  deactivate     Add the inactive tag to a statement
  delete        Delete a data element
  edit          Edit a sub-element
  exit          Exit from this level
  help          Provide help information
  insert        Insert a new ordered data element
  load          Load configuration from ASCII file
  quit          Quit from this level
  rename        Rename a statement
  rollback      Roll back to previous committed configuration
  run           Run an operational-mode command
  save          Save configuration to ASCII file
  set           Set a parameter
  show          Show a parameter
  status        Show users currently editing configuration
  top           Exit to top level of configuration
  up            Exit one level of configuration
  wildcard      Wildcard operations

```

The JUNOS software configuration consists of a hierarchy of *statements*. There are two types of statements: *container statements*, which contain other statements, and *leaf statements*, which do not contain other statements. All the container and leaf statements together form the configuration hierarchy.

Each statement consists of a fixed keyword and, optionally, an identifier that you define, such as the name of an interface or a username.

To configure the Services Router or to modify an existing configuration, you add statements to the configuration with the **edit** and **set** configuration mode commands. For more information about the CLI configuration editor and configuration mode, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide* and the JUNOS software configuration guides.

## CLI Basics

This section contains the following topics:

- Editing Keystrokes on page 72
- Command Completion on page 73
- Online Help on page 73
- Configuring the CLI Environment on page 74

## Editing Keystrokes

In the CLI, you use keystrokes to move around on and edit the command line, and to scroll through a list of recently executed commands. Table 37 on page 72 lists some typical CLI editing tasks and the keystrokes that perform them.

**Table 37: CLI Editing Keystrokes**

Task Category	Action	Keyboard Sequence
Move the cursor.	Move the cursor back one character.	Ctrl-b
	Move the cursor back one word.	Esc b
	Move the cursor forward one character.	Ctrl-f
	Move the cursor forward one word.	Esc f
	Move the cursor to the end of the command line.	Ctrl-e
Delete characters.	Delete the character before the cursor.	Ctrl-h, Delete, or Backspace
	Delete the character at the cursor.	Ctrl-d
	Delete all characters from the cursor to the end of the command line.	Ctrl-k
	Delete all characters on the command line.	Ctrl-u or Ctrl-x
	Delete the word before the cursor.	Ctrl-w or Esc Backspace
	Delete the word after the cursor.	Esc d
Insert recently deleted text.	Insert the most recently deleted text at the cursor.	Ctrl-y
Redraw the screen.	Redraw the current line.	Ctrl-l
Display previous command lines.	Scroll backward through the list of recently executed commands.	Ctrl-p
	Scroll forward through the list of recently executed commands.	Ctrl-n
	Search the CLI history in reverse order for lines matching the search string.	Ctrl-r
	Search the CLI history by typing some text at the prompt, followed by the keyboard sequence. The CLI attempts to expand the text into the most recent word in the history for which the text is a prefix.	Esc /
Repeat keyboard sequences.	Specify the number of times to execute a keyboard sequence. Replace <i>number</i> with a number from 1 through 9, and replace <i>sequence</i> with a keyboard sequence in this table.	Esc <i>number sequence</i>

## Command Completion

You do not always have to remember or type the full command or option name for the CLI to recognize it. To display all possible command or option completions, type the partial command followed immediately by a question mark (?).

To complete a command or option that you have partially typed, press Tab or Spacebar. If the partially typed letters uniquely identify a command, the complete command name appears. Otherwise, a message indicates that your entry is ambiguous or invalid. Possible command completions are displayed if your entry is ambiguous.

You can also use command completion on filenames and usernames. To display all possible values, type one or more characters followed immediately by a question mark. To complete these partial entries, press Tab only. Pressing Spacebar does not work.

## Online Help

The CLI provides context-sensitive help at every level of the command hierarchy. The help information tells you which commands are available at the current level in the hierarchy and provides a brief description of each.

To get help while in the CLI, type a question mark (?) in one of the following ways:

- Type a question mark at the command-line prompt. The CLI lists the available commands and options. For examples, see “CLI Operational Mode” on page 69 and “CLI Configuration Mode” on page 70.
- Type a question mark after entering the complete name of a command or command option. The CLI lists the available commands and options, then redisplay the command names and options that you typed:

```
user@host> request ?

Possible completions:
  chassis      Perform chassis-specific operations
  ipsec        Perform IP Security operations
  message      Send text message to other users
  routing-engine Log in to Routing Engine
  security     Perform security-level operations
  services     Perform service application operations
  support      Perform JUNOS support tasks
  system       Perform system-level operations
user@host> request
```

- Type a question mark in the middle of a command name. The CLI lists possible command completions that match the letters you have entered so far, then redisplay the letters that you typed. For example, to list all operational mode commands that start with the letter s, type the following:

```
user@host> s?

Possible completions:
  set          Set CLI properties, date/time, craft interface
  message
```

```

show          Show system information
ssh          Start secure shell on another host
start        Start shell
user@host> s

```

When you enter the **help** commands described in Table 38 on page 74, the CLI displays usage guidelines and summary information for configuration statements and operational mode commands. You can enter **help** commands in operational or configuration mode.

**Table 38: help Commands**

CLI Command	Description
<code>help apropos <i>string</i></code>	<p>Displays help based on a text string contained in a statement or command name.</p> <p>If the string contains spaces, enclose it in quotation marks. You also can specify a regular expression for the string, using standard UNIX-style regular expression syntax.</p> <p>In configuration mode, this command displays statement names and help text that match the string specified.</p> <p>In operational mode, this command displays the following types of commands that match the string specified, plus help text:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Operational mode commands</li> <li>■ <code>help topic</code> and <code>help reference</code> commands you can enter for more information</li> </ul> <p>For example, to get a list of statements that contain the string <b>traps</b>, enter the <code>help apropos traps</code> command in configuration mode.</p>
<code>help reference <i>string</i></code>	<p>Displays summary information for configuration statements.</p> <p>For example, to display summary information for the OSPF hello interval, enter the command <code>help reference ospf hello-interval</code>.</p>
<code>help topic <i>string</i></code>	<p>Displays usage guidelines for configuration statements.</p> <p>For example, to display usage guidelines for the OSPF hello interval, enter the command <code>help topic ospf hello-interval</code>.</p>

## Configuring the CLI Environment

You can configure the CLI environment for your current login session. Your settings are not retained when you exit the CLI.

To display the current CLI settings, enter the **show cli** command:

```

user@host> show cli
CLI complete-on-space set to on
CLI idle-timeout disabled
CLI restart-on-upgrade set to on

```

```

CLI screen-length set to 49
CLI screen-width set to 132
CLI terminal is 'vt100'
CLI is operating in enhanced mode
CLI working directory is '/cf/var/home/remote'

```

To change the CLI environment, use the `set cli operational mode` command:

```

user@host> set cli ?
Possible completions:
  complete-on-space  Set whether typing space completes current word
  directory          Set working directory
  idle-timeout       Set maximum idle time before login session ends
  prompt            Set CLI command prompt string
  restart-on-upgrade Set whether CLI prompts to restart after software upgrade

  screen-length      Set number of lines on screen
  screen-width       Set number of characters on a line
  terminal           Set terminal type

```

Table 39 on page 75 shows how you can change the CLI environment features.

**Table 39: Configuring the CLI Environment**

Environment Feature	CLI Command	Default Setting	Options
Command completion	<code>set cli complete-on-space (on   off)</code>	on—Pressing Tab or Spacebar completes a command.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set <code>off</code> to allow only Tab for command completion.</li> <li>■ Set <code>on</code> to re-enable Tab and Spacebar for command completion.</li> </ul>
Your working directory	<code>set cli directory <i>path</i></code>	<code>/cf/var/home/remote</code>	Replace <i>path</i> with the directory you want to enter when you log in to the Services Router.
Minutes of idle time	<code>set cli idle-time <i>minutes</i></code>	Your session never times out unless your login class specifies a timeout.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To enable the timeout feature, replace <i>timeout</i> with a value between 1 and 100,000.</li> <li>■ To disable the timeout feature, replace <i>timeout</i> with 0.</li> </ul>
Your session prompt	<code>set cli prompt <i>string</i></code>	<code>user@host &gt;</code>	Replace <i>string</i> with the prompt you want. If the prompt contains spaces or special characters, enclose <i>string</i> in quotation marks (“ ”).
Restart-after-upgrade prompt	<code>set cli restart-on-upgrade (on   off)</code>	CLI prompts you to restart the Services Router after a software upgrade.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set <code>off</code> to disable the prompt for the session.</li> <li>■ Set <code>on</code> to reenablen the prompt.</li> </ul>

**Table 39: Configuring the CLI Environment** (*continued*)

Environment Feature	CLI Command	Default Setting	Options
Number of CLI output line displayed at once	<code>set cli screen-length <i>length</i></code>	Variable (depends on terminal type).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To change the number of lines displayed on the screen, replace <i>length</i> with a value between 1 and 100,000.</li> <li>■ To disable the display of a set number of lines, replace <i>length</i> with 0. (This feature can be useful when you are issuing CLI commands from scripts.)</li> </ul>
Number of CLI characters displayed on a line	<code>set cli screen-width <i>width</i></code>	Variable (depends on terminal type).	To change the number of characters displayed on a line, replace <i>width</i> with a value between 0 and 100,000.
Your terminal type.	<code>set cli terminal <i>terminal-type</i></code>	unknown, or set by console.	Replace <i>terminal-type</i> with one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ansi</li> <li>■ vt100</li> <li>■ small-xterm</li> <li>■ xterm</li> </ul>



## **Part 2**

# **Installing a Services Router**

- Preparing for Router Installation on page 79
- Installing and Connecting a Services Router on page 89
- Establishing Basic Connectivity on page 103
- Configuring Secure Web Access on page 123
- Installing and Managing J-series Licenses on page 131



## Chapter 5

# Preparing for Router Installation

Before installing a J-series Services Router, make sure that your site has the proper operating environment and equipment. Use the checklist at the end of the chapter to help you prepare your site.

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- General Site Guidelines on page 79
- Desktop and Wall Mounting Requirements on page 80
- Rack Requirements on page 80
- Router Environmental Tolerances on page 81
- Spacing of Mounting Holes on page 82
- Fire Safety Requirements on page 82
- Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications on page 83
- Network Cable Specifications on page 87
- ISDN Provisioning on page 87
- Site Preparation Checklist on page 88

## General Site Guidelines

---

The following precautions help you plan an acceptable operating environment for your Services Router and avoid environmentally caused equipment failures:

- For the cooling system to function properly, the airflow around the chassis must be unrestricted. Allow at least 6 in. (15.2 cm) of clearance between the front and back of the chassis and adjacent equipment. Ensure that there is adequate circulation in the installation location.
- Follow ESD procedures described in “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195, to avoid damaging equipment. Static discharge can cause components to fail completely or intermittently over time.
- Install blank PIM panels in empty slots, to prevent any interruption or reduction in the flow of air across internal components.

## Desktop and Wall Mounting Requirements

---

The J2300 Services Router can be installed on a desktop or wall. When choosing a location, allow at least 6 in. (15.2 cm) of clearance between the front and back of the chassis and adjacent equipment or walls.

If you are mounting the J2300 router on a wall, use wall screws or wall anchors capable of supporting the full weight of the chassis, up to 12 lb (5.4 kg). If possible, install the wall anchors into wall studs, which provide added support for the chassis.

## Rack Requirements

---

All J-series Services Routers can be installed in a rack. J4300 and J6300 Services Routers must be installed in a rack. Many types of racks are acceptable, including front-mount racks, four-post (telco) racks, and center-mount racks.

The following sections describe rack requirements:

- Rack Size and Strength on page 80
- Connection to Building Structure on page 81

### Rack Size and Strength

The Services Router is designed for installation in a rack that complies with either of the following standards:

- A 19-in. rack as defined in Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment (document number EIA-310-D) published by the Electronics Industry Association (<http://www.eia.org>)
- A 600-mm rack as defined in the four-part *Equipment Engineering (EE); European telecommunications standard for equipment practice* (document numbers ETS 300 119-1 through 119-4) published by the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (<http://www.etsi.org>)

The horizontal spacing between the rails in a rack that complies with this standard is usually wider than the router's mounting ears, which measure 19 in. (48.2 cm) from outer edge to outer edge. Use approved wing devices to narrow the opening between the rails as required.

The rack rails must be spaced widely enough to accommodate the router chassis's external dimensions

- A J2300 chassis is 1.75 in. (4.4 cm) high, 17.25 in. (43.8 cm) wide, and 12.37 in. (31.4 cm) deep.
- A J4300 or J6300 chassis is 3.5 in. (8.9 cm) high, 17 in. (43.2 cm) wide, and 19 in. (48.3 cm) deep.

The outer edges of the mounting ears extend the width of either chassis to 19 in. (48.2 cm), and the front of the chassis extends approximately 0.5 in. (1.27 cm) beyond the mounting ears. The spacing of rails and adjacent racks must also allow

for the clearances around the router and rack. (See “General Site Guidelines” on page 79.)



**CAUTION:** If you are mounting the router in a cabinet, be sure that ventilation is sufficient to prevent overheating.

If a front-mount rack is used, we recommend supporting the back of the router with a shelf or other structure.

The J2300 chassis height of 1.75 in. (4.4 cm) equals 1 U. The J4300 and J6300 chassis height of 3.5 in. (8.7 cm) equals 2 U. Each *U* is a standard rack unit defined in Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment (document number EIA-310-D) published by the Electronics Industry Association.

**Connection to Building Structure**

Always secure the rack to the structure of the building. If your geographical area is subject to earthquakes, bolt the rack to the floor. For maximum stability, also secure the rack to ceiling brackets. For more information, see “Rack-Mounting Requirements and Warnings” on page 211.

**Router Environmental Tolerances**

Table 40 on page 81 specifies the environmental conditions required for normal Services Router operation. In addition, the site must be as dust-free as possible. Dust can clog air intake vents, reducing cooling system efficiency. Check vents frequently, cleaning them as necessary.

**Table 40: Router Environmental Tolerances**

Description	Value
Altitude	No performance degradation to 10,000 ft (3048 m)
Relative humidity	Normal operation ensured in relative humidity range of 5 % to 90 %, noncondensing
Temperature	Normal operation ensured in temperature range of 0°C (32°F) to 40°C (104°F)  Non-operating storage temperature in shipping carton: 40°C (–40°F) to 70°C (158°F)
Seismic	Designed to meet Telcordia Technologies Zone 4 earthquake requirements

**Table 40: Router Environmental Tolerances** *(continued)*

Description	Value
Maximum thermal output	J2300 chassis
	■ Typical—270 BTU/hour (80 W)
	■ Maximum—750 BTU/hour (220 W)
	J4300 and J6300 chassis
	■ Typical—510 BTU/hour (150 W)
	■ Maximum—1190 BTU/hour (350 W)

## Spacing of Mounting Holes

The mounting holes in the mounting brackets provided with the J2300 Services Router chassis are spaced 1.25 in. (3.2 cm) apart, measured from the center of the hole.

The mounting holes in the mounting brackets attached to the J4300 and J6300 chassis are spaced in two groups. The space between the holes in each group is 0.6 in. (1.5 cm) apart, measured from the center of each hole. The space between the two groups is 1.75 (4.4 cm) apart, measured from the center of the lower hole in the top group to the upper hole in the bottom group.

## Fire Safety Requirements

In the event of a fire emergency involving Services Routers and other network equipment, the safety of people is the primary concern. Establish procedures for protecting people in the event of a fire emergency, provide safety training, and properly provision fire-control equipment and fire extinguishers.

In addition, establish procedures to protect your equipment in the event of a fire emergency. Juniper Networks products must be installed in an environment suitable for electronic equipment. We recommend that fire suppression equipment be available in the event of a fire in the vicinity of the equipment, and that all local fire, safety, and electrical codes and ordinances be observed when you are installing and operating your equipment.

## Fire Suppression

In the event of an electrical hazard or an electrical fire, first unplug the power cord. (For shutdown instructions, see “Powering a Services Router On and Off” on page 102.)

Then, use a Type C fire extinguisher, which uses noncorrosive fire retardants, to extinguish the fire. For more information about fire extinguishers, see “Fire Suppression Equipment” on page 83.

## Fire Suppression Equipment

Type C fire extinguishers, which use noncorrosive fire retardants such as carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) and Halotron, are most effective for suppressing electrical fires. Type C fire extinguishers displace the oxygen from the point of combustion to eliminate the fire. For extinguishing fire on or around equipment that draws air from the environment for cooling, use this type of inert oxygen displacement extinguisher instead of an extinguisher that leave residues on equipment.

Do not use multipurpose Type ABC chemical fire extinguishers (dry chemical fire extinguishers) near Juniper Networks equipment. The primary ingredient in these fire extinguishers is monoammonium phosphate, which is very sticky and difficult to clean. In addition, in minute amounts of moisture, monoammonium phosphate can become highly corrosive and corrodes most metals.



**NOTE:** To keep warranties effective, do not use a dry chemical fire extinguisher to control a fire at or near a Juniper Networks router. If a dry chemical fire extinguisher is used, the unit is no longer eligible for coverage under a service agreement.

---

Any equipment in a room in which a chemical fire extinguisher has been discharged is subject to premature failure and unreliable operation. The equipment is considered to be irreparably damaged.

We recommend that you dispose of any irreparably damaged equipment in an environmentally responsible manner.

## Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications

---

All Services Routers are available with either AC or DC power. For information about each router's power system, see “J2300 Power System” on page 19, “J4300 Power System” on page 29, and “J6300 Power System” on page 29.

For site wiring and power system guidelines, requirements, and specifications, see the following sections:

- Site Electrical Wiring Guidelines on page 83
- Router Power Requirements on page 84
- AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications on page 85
- DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications on page 86

## Site Electrical Wiring Guidelines

---



**WARNING:** DC-powered J2300 Services Routers are intended for installation in a dedicated equipment room where they are accessible by trained personnel only. DC-powered J4300 and J6300 Services Routers are intended for installation only in a restricted access location.

---

When planning the electrical wiring at your site, consider the factors discussed in the following sections.

### Signaling Limitations

Improperly installed wires can emit radio interference. In addition, the potential for damage from lightning strikes increases if wires exceed recommended distances, or if wires pass between buildings. The electromagnetic pulse (EMP) caused by lightning can damage unshielded conductors and destroy electronic devices. If your site has previously experienced such problems, you might want to consult experts in electrical surge suppression and shielding.

### Radio Frequency Interference

You can reduce or eliminate the emission of radio frequency interference (RFI) from your site wiring by using twisted-pair cable with a good distribution of grounding conductors. If you must exceed the recommended distances, use a high-quality twisted-pair cable with one ground conductor for each data signal when applicable.

### Electromagnetic Compatibility

If your site is susceptible to problems with electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), particularly from lightning or radio transmitters, you might want to seek expert advice. Strong sources of electromagnetic interference (EMI) can destroy the signal drivers and receivers in the router and conduct power surges over the lines into the equipment, resulting in an electrical hazard. It is particularly important to provide a properly grounded and shielded environment and to use electrical surge-suppression devices.



**CAUTION:** To comply with intrabuilding lightning/surge requirements, intrabuilding wiring must be shielded, and the shield for the wiring must be grounded at both ends.

## Router Power Requirements

Table 41 on page 84 lists the AC and DC power system electrical specifications for J-series Services Routers.

**Table 41: AC and DC Power System Electrical Specifications**

Item	Specification
AC input voltage	100 to 240 VAC nominal
	100 to 264 VAC operating range (J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Routers)
AC input line frequency	47 to 63 Hz (J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Routers)
	50 to 60 Hz (J4350 and J6350 Services Routers)



**Table 41: AC and DC Power System Electrical Specifications** *(continued)*

Item	Specification
AC system current rating	4 to 2 A (J2300 Services Router)
	6 to 3 A (J4300 and J6300 Services Routers)
	6 A (J4350 Services Router)
	8 A (J6350 Services Router)
DC input voltage	–42 to –72 VDC operating range (J2300, J4300, and J6300 Services Routers)
	–48 to –60 VDC operating range (J4350 and J6350 Services Routers)
DC system current rating	4 A @ –48 VDC (nominal, J2300 Services Router)
	8 A @ –48 VDC (nominal, J4300 and J6300 Services Routers)
	20 A ((J4350 and J6350 Services Routers)

**AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications**



**NOTE:** The AC power cord for the Services Router is intended for use with the router only and not for any other use.

Detachable AC power cords, each 2.5 m (approximately 8 ft) long, are supplied with the Services Router. The appliance coupler at the female end of the cord inserts into the appliance inlet on the faceplate of the AC power supply. The coupler is type C19 as described by International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standard 60320. The plug at the male end of the power cord fits into the power source receptacle that is standard for your geographical location.



**NOTE:** In North America, AC power cords must not exceed 4.5 m (approximately 14.75 ft) in length, to comply with National Electrical Code (NEC) Sections 400-8 (NFPA 75, 5-2.2) and 210-52, and Canadian Electrical Code (CEC) Section 4-010(3). The cords supplied with the router are in compliance.

Table 42 on page 85 lists AC power cord specifications provided for each country or region.

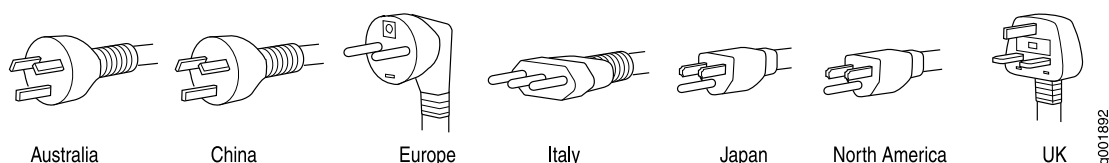
**Table 42: AC Power Cord Specifications**

Country	Electrical Specifications	Plug Standards
Australia	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	AS/NZ 3112–1993
China	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	GB2099.1 1996 and GB1002 1996 (CH1-10P)

**Table 42: AC Power Cord Specifications** (continued)

Country	Electrical Specifications	Plug Standards
Europe (except Italy and United Kingdom)	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	CEE (7) VII
Italy	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	CEI 23-16/VII
Japan	125 VAC, 12 A, 50 Hz or 60 Hz	JIS 8303
North America	125 VAC, 10 A, 60 Hz	NEMA 5-15
United Kingdom	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	BS 1363A

Figure 39 on page 86 illustrates the plug on the power cord for each country or region listed in Table 42 on page 85.

**Figure 39: AC Plug Types**

**NOTE:** Power cords and cables must not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on them.

For information about the AC power supply, see “J2300 Power System” on page 19, “J4300 Power System” on page 29, or “J6300 Power System” on page 29.

To connect the power cord during initial installation, see “Connecting Power” on page 96.

To replace the AC power cord, see “Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord” on page 158.

## DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications

Each DC power supply has a single DC input (–48 VDC and return) that requires a dedicated 15 A (–48 VDC) circuit breaker. If the J6300 router contains redundant DC power supplies, one power supply must be powered by a dedicated power feed derived from feed A, and the other power supply must be powered by a dedicated power feed derived from feed B. This configuration provides the commonly deployed A/B feed redundancy for the system.

Most sites distribute DC power through a main conduit that leads to frame-mounted DC power distribution panels, one of which might be located at the top of the rack that houses the router. A pair of cables (one input and one return) connects each set of terminal studs to the power distribution panel.



**CAUTION:** You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity. There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply.



**WARNING:** Power plant ground and chassis ground must be connected to the same building ground.



**CAUTION:** Before router installation begins, a licensed electrician must attach a cable lug to the grounding and power cables that you supply. A cable with an incorrectly attached lug can damage the router (for example, by causing a short circuit).

Each DC power cable (–48 VDC and return) must be 14 AWG single-strand wire cable, or as permitted by the local code. Each lug attached to the power cables must be a ring-type, vinyl-insulated TV14-6R lug, or equivalent.



**NOTE:** Power cords and cables must not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on them.

For information about the DC power supply, see “J2300 Power System” on page 19, “J4300 Power System” on page 29, or “J6300 Power System” on page 29.

To connect the DC power cable during initial installation, see “Connecting DC Power” on page 98.

To replace a DC power cable, see “Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable” on page 161.

## Network Cable Specifications

The Services Router supports interfaces that use various kinds of network cable. For information about the type of cable used by each interface, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

## ISDN Provisioning

You might need a network termination type 1 (NT1) device to connect your ISDN interface to the ISDN service. Contact your service provider for details on the following information:

- External NT1 device and ISDN cable
- If the two items are required, where to obtain the items
- List of NT1 vendors

## Site Preparation Checklist

---

The checklist in Table 43 on page 88 summarizes the tasks you need to perform when preparing a site for Services Router installation.

**Table 43: Site Preparation Checklist**

Item or Task	Performed By	Date	Notes
Verify that environmental factors such as temperature and humidity do not exceed router tolerances.			
Measure the distances between external power sources and the router installation site.			
Select the type of rack.			
Plan the rack location, including required space clearances.			
Secure the rack to the floor and the building structure.			
Acquire appropriate cables and connectors.			

## Chapter 6

# Installing and Connecting a Services Router

Make the appropriate preparations and verify the J-series equipment before installing a J-series Services Router and connecting it to a power source and the network.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Before You Begin on page 89
- Unpacking a J-series Services Router on page 90
- Installing the J2300 Services Router on page 91
- Installing the J4300 or J6300 Services Router on page 94
- Connecting Interface Cables to a Services Router on page 95
- Chassis Grounding on page 96
- Connecting Power on page 96
- Powering a Services Router On and Off on page 102

## Before You Begin

---

Before you begin installation, complete the following tasks:

- Read the information in “Maintenance and Operational Safety Guidelines and Warnings” on page 219, with particular attention to “Chassis Lifting Guidelines” on page 210.
- Determine where to install the Services Router, and verify that the rack or installation site meets the requirements described in “Preparing for Router Installation” on page 79.
- For installation, gather the equipment and tools listed in Table 44 on page 90.

**Table 44: Equipment and Tools Required for Services Router Installation**

Desk Installation—J2300 Services Router Only	Wall Installation—J2300 Services Router Only	Rack Installation
Rubber feet (provided)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Rubber feet (provided)</li> <li>■ Mounting brackets and screws (provided)</li> <li>■ Number 2 Phillips screwdriver</li> <li>■ Four wall screws or four mounting screws and anchors capable of supporting the full weight of the chassis, up to 12 lb (5.4 kg)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mounting brackets and screws (provided)</li> <li>■ Number 2 Phillips screwdriver</li> <li>■ Four (J2300) or eight (J4300 and J6300) mounting screws appropriate for your rack</li> </ul>

- For installation, gather the following equipment and tools: mounting brackets and screws (provided), number 2 Phillips screwdriver, and mounting screws appropriate for your rack.
- To connect the router to power and ground, have ready a grounding cable and lug, as specified in “Chassis Grounding” on page 96, and the power cords or cords shipped with the router. (You must supply your own power cables if you have a DC-powered router. See “DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications” on page 86.)



**NOTE:** The AC power cord for the Services Router is intended for use with the router only and not for any other use.

- To connect network interfaces, have ready a length of cable used by the interface, as specified in “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.
- If your router has ISDN ports, you might need an NT1 device to connect to the ISDN service. For details, see “ISDN Provisioning” on page 87.

## Unpacking a J-series Services Router

The Services Router is shipped in a cardboard carton and secured with foam packing material. The carton also contains an accessory box and quick start instructions.



**NOTE:** The router is maximally protected inside the shipping carton. Do not unpack it until you are ready to begin installation.

To unpack the router:

1. Move the shipping carton to a staging area as close to the installation site as possible, but where you have enough room to remove the router.
2. Position the carton so that the arrows are pointing up.
3. Open the top flaps on the shipping carton.

4. Remove the accessory box, and verify the contents against the parts inventory on the label attached to the carton.
5. Pull out the packing material holding the router in place.
6. Verify the contents of the carton against the packing list included with the router.
7. Save the shipping carton and packing materials in case you later need to move or ship the router.

## Installing the J2300 Services Router

---



**WARNING:** DC-powered J2300 Services Routers are intended for installation in a dedicated equipment room where they are accessible by trained personnel only.

---

You can install the J2300 Services Router on a desk, on a wall, or in a rack. The J2300 Services Router includes mounting brackets that support either wall or rack mounting, and rubber feet for desk and wall mounting.

Install the J2300 Services Router as appropriate for your site, with one of the following procedures:

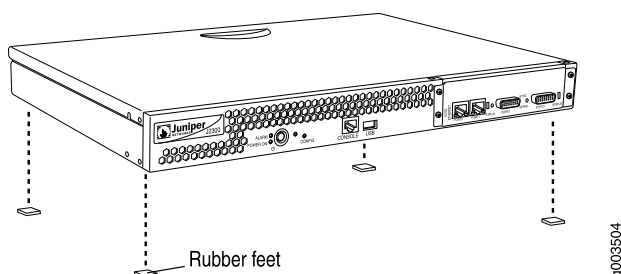
- Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Desk on page 91
- Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Wall on page 92
- Installing the J2300 Services Router into a Rack on page 93

### ***Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Desk***

You can install the J2300 Services Router on a desk, table, or other level surface. The router is shipped with rubber feet in the accessory box. The rubber feet are necessary to stabilize the router on the desk.

To install the J2300 router on a desk:

1. Turn the chassis upside-down on the desk or work surface where you intend to operate the router.
2. Attach the provided rubber feet to the bottom of the chassis, as shown in Figure 40 on page 92.
3. Turn the chassis right-side up on the desk or work surface.

**Figure 40: Attaching Rubber Feet to the J2300 Services Router**

### ***Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Wall***

You can install the J2300 Services Router on a wall. The router is shipped with mounting brackets and rubber feet in the accessory box. The rubber feet help stabilize the router on the wall and enhance airflow.

To install the J2300 router on a wall:

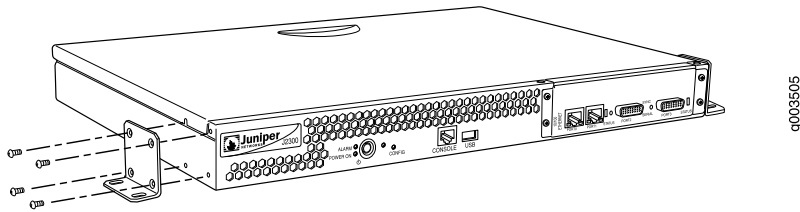
1. Turn the chassis upside-down on a desk or work surface near where you intend to operate the router.
2. Attach the provided rubber feet to the bottom of the chassis, as shown in Figure 40 on page 92.
3. Turn the chassis right-side up, and place it on a flat surface.
4. Position a mounting bracket on each side of the chassis as shown in Figure 41 on page 93.
5. Use a number 2 Phillips screwdriver to install the screws that secure the mounting brackets to the chassis.
6. If you are using wall anchors to support the chassis, install two pairs of anchors on the wall, spaced 19 in. (48.3 cm) apart.



**CAUTION:** Mounting screws and wall anchors must be strong enough to support the full weight of the chassis, up to 12 lb (5.4 kg). Attaching the router to wall studs or using wall anchors provides extra support for the chassis.

7. Have one person grasp the sides of the router, lift the router, and position it on the wall.
8. Have a second person install two pairs of mounting screws through the bracket holes on either side of the router, to secure the router to the wall.
9. Verify that the mounting screws on one side are aligned with the mounting screws on the opposite side and that the router is level.



**Figure 41: Attaching Mounting Brackets to Install a J2300 Services Router on a Wall**

### Installing the J2300 Services Router into a Rack

You can front-mount the J2300 Services Router in a rack. The router is shipped with mounting brackets in the accessory box. Many types of racks are acceptable, including four-post (telco) racks, enclosed cabinets, and open-frame racks. For more information about the type of rack or cabinet the J-series router can be installed into, see “Rack Requirements” on page 80.



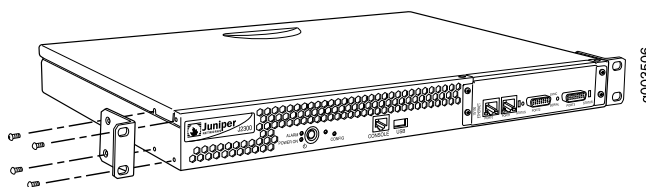
**NOTE:** If you are installing multiple routers in one rack, install the lowest one first and proceed upward in the rack.



**NOTE:** The chassis weighs up to 12 lb (5.4 kg). Have one person lift the chassis into the rack and a second person secure the mounting screws.

To install the J2300 router into a rack:

1. Position a mounting bracket on each side of the chassis as shown in Figure 42 on page 94.
2. Use a number 2 Phillips screwdriver to install the screws that secure the mounting brackets to the chassis.
3. Have one person grasp the sides of the router, lift the router, and position it in the rack.
4. Align the bottom hole in each mounting bracket with a hole in each rack rail, making sure the chassis is level.
5. Have a second person install a mounting screw into each of the two aligned holes. Use a number 2 Phillips screwdriver to tighten the screws.
6. Install the second screw in each mounting bracket.
7. Verify that the mounting screws on one side of the rack are aligned with the mounting screws on the opposite side and that the router is level.

**Figure 42: Attaching Mounting Brackets to Install a J2300 Services Router in a Rack**

## Installing the J4300 or J6300 Services Router



**WARNING:** DC-powered Services Routers are intended for installation only in a restricted access location.

You can front-mount the J4300 or J6300 Services Router in a rack. Many types of racks are acceptable, including four-post (telco) racks, enclosed cabinets, and open-frame racks. For more information about the type of rack or cabinet the J-series router can be installed into, see “Rack Requirements” on page 80.



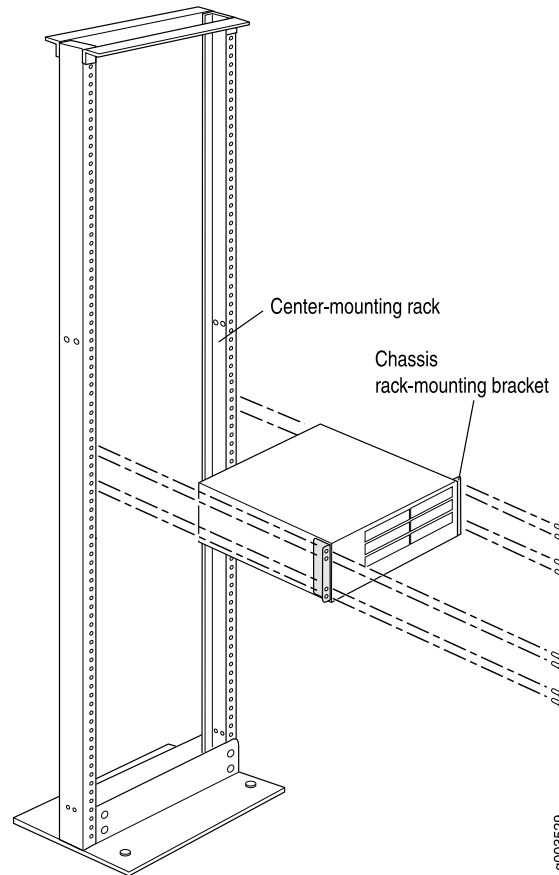
**WARNING:** If you are installing multiple routers in one rack, install the lowest one first and proceed upward in the rack. Install heavier routers in the lower part of the rack. The router should be mounted at the bottom of the rack if it is the only unit in the rack.



**NOTE:** The chassis weighs between 18 lb (8 kg) and 31 lb (14 kg). Have one person lift the chassis into the rack and a second person secure the mounting screws.

To install the J4300 or J6300 router into a rack:

1. Have one person grasp the sides of the router, lift the router, and position it in the rack.
2. Align the bottom hole in each mounting bracket with a hole in each rack rail as shown in Figure 43 on page 95, making sure the chassis is level.
3. Have a second person install a mounting screw into each of the two aligned holes. Use a number 2 Phillips screwdriver to tighten the screws.
4. Install the remaining screws in each mounting bracket.
5. Verify that the mounting screws on one side of the rack are aligned with the mounting screws on the opposite side and that the router is level.

**Figure 43: Installing the J4300 or J6300 Services Router**

## Connecting Interface Cables to a Services Router

You connect the interfaces installed in the Services Router to various network media. For more information about the network interfaces supported on the router, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

1. Have ready a length of the type of cable used by the interface, as specified in “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.
2. Insert the cable connector into the cable connector port on the interface faceplate.
3. Arrange the cable as follows to prevent it from dislodging or developing stress points:
  - a. Secure the cable so that it is not supporting its own weight as it hangs to the floor.
  - b. Place excess cable out of the way in a neatly coiled loop.
  - c. Place fasteners on the loop to help maintain its shape.

## Chassis Grounding

---

To meet safety and electromagnetic interference (EMI) requirements and to ensure proper operation, the Services Router must be adequately grounded before power is connected. In addition to the grounding pin on the AC power plug cord, a threaded insert (PEM nut), screw, and washer are provided on the rear of the chassis to connect the router to earth ground.



**CAUTION:** Before router installation begins, a licensed electrician must attach a cable lug to the grounding and power cables that you supply. A cable with an incorrectly attached lug can damage the router (for example, by causing a short circuit).

---

The grounding cables must be 14 AWG single-strand wire cable, and must be able to handle the following amperage:

- J2300 router—up to 4 A
- J4300 router and J6300 router—up to 8 A

Each grounding lug must be a ring-type, vinyl-insulated TV14-6R lug, or equivalent, to accommodate the 14 AWG cable.

To ground the router before connecting power, you connect the grounding cable to earth ground and then attach the lug on the cable to the chassis grounding point, with the screw. (See “Connecting Power” on page 96.)

## Connecting Power

---

J2300 or J4300 Services Routers have a single fixed power supply. J6300 Services Routers have one or two field-replaceable power supplies. For more information about the J-series power specifications, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 83.



**WARNING:** DC-powered J2300 Services Routers are intended for installation in a dedicated equipment room where they are accessible by trained personnel only. DC-powered Services Routers are intended for installation only in a restricted access location.

---

## Connecting AC Power

The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation. The protective earthing terminal on the rear of the chassis is provided to connect the router to ground. Additional grounding is provided to an AC-powered router when you plug its power supply into a grounded AC power receptacle.

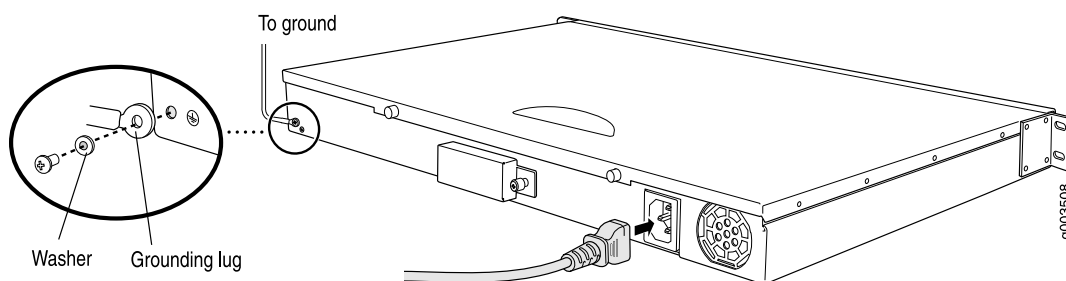
The AC power cord shipped with the router connects the router to earth ground when plugged into an AC grounding-type power outlet. The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation.

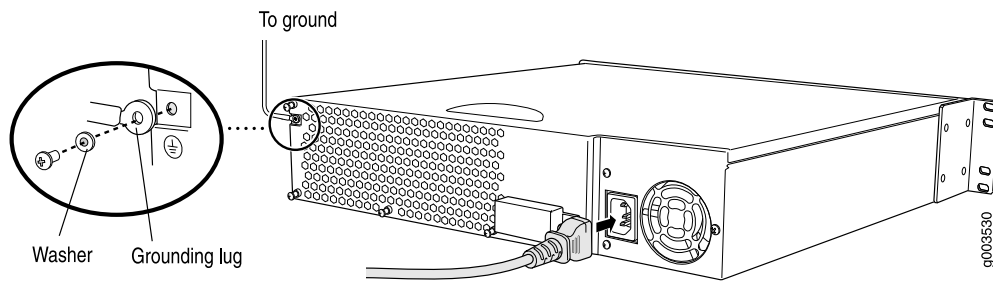
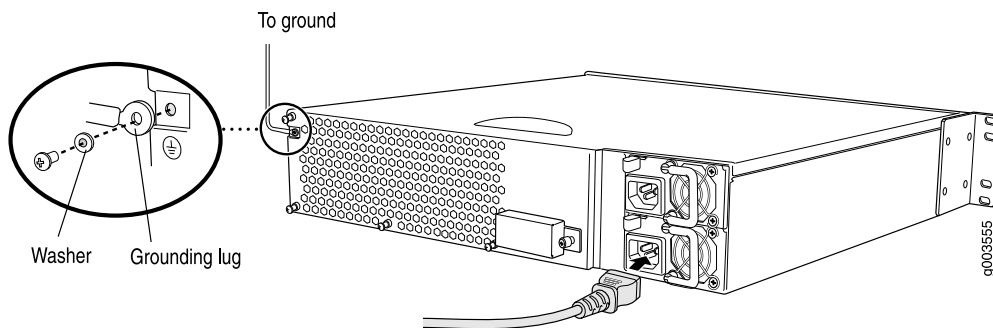
For power cord requirements, see “AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications” on page 85

To connect AC power to the router:

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist, and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
2. Use a grounding cable to connect the router to earth ground: (For cable requirements, see “Chassis Grounding” on page 96.)
  - a. Verify that a licensed electrician has attached an appropriate grounding cable lug to the grounding cable.
  - b. Connect one end of the grounding cable to a proper earth ground, such as the rack in which the router is installed.
  - c. With a Phillips screwdriver, remove the screw and washer from the PEM nut at the grounding point on the rear of the chassis.
  - d. Place the grounding lug at the other end of the cable over the grounding point, as shown in Figure 44 on page 97, Figure 45 on page 98, and Figure 46 on page 98.
  - e. Secure the cable lug to the grounding point, first with the washer, then with the screw.
3. Locate the power cord or cords shipped with the router, which has a plug appropriate for your geographical location. For power cord specifications, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 83.
4. For each power supply:
  - a. Insert the appliance coupler end of a power cord into the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate, as shown in Figure 44 on page 97, Figure 45 on page 98, and Figure 46 on page 98.
  - b. Insert the plug into an AC power source receptacle.
5. Verify that the power cord does not block access to router components or drape where people can trip on it.

**Figure 44: Connecting AC Power to the J2300 Services Router**



**Figure 45: Connecting AC Power to the J4300 Services Router****Figure 46: Connecting AC Power to the J6300 Services Router**

## Connecting DC Power



**CAUTION:** If your J6300 Services Router includes an optional redundant DC power supply, connect each of the two power supplies to different input power sources. Failure to do so makes the router susceptible to total power failure if one of the power supplies fails.

The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation. The protective earthing terminal on the rear of the chassis is provided to connect the router to ground.

For DC cable requirements, see “DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications” on page 86.

To connect DC power to the router:

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist, and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
2. Use a grounding cable to connect the router to earth ground: (For cable requirements, see “Chassis Grounding” on page 96.)

- a. Verify that a licensed electrician has attached an appropriate grounding cable lug to the grounding cable.
- b. Connect one end of the grounding cable to a proper earth ground, such as the rack in which the router is installed.
- c. With a Phillips screwdriver, remove the screw and washer from the PEM nut at the grounding point on the rear of the chassis.
- d. Place the grounding lug at the other end of the cable over the grounding point, as shown in Figure 47 on page 100, Figure 48 on page 101, and Figure 49 on page 101.
- e. Secure the cable lug to the grounding point, first with the washer, then with the screw.



**NOTE:** A DC power supply in a Services Router becomes grounded when you connect a grounding cable between the router and earth ground.

---

3. For each power supply:
  - a. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that there is no chance that the cable leads might become active during installation.



**CAUTION:** You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity. There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply.

---

- b. Verify that a licensed electrician has attached the appropriate power cable lugs to the negative and positive DC source power cables.
- c. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
- d. Within the terminal block, remove the two center screws next to the labels **–48 VDC** and **RTN**.

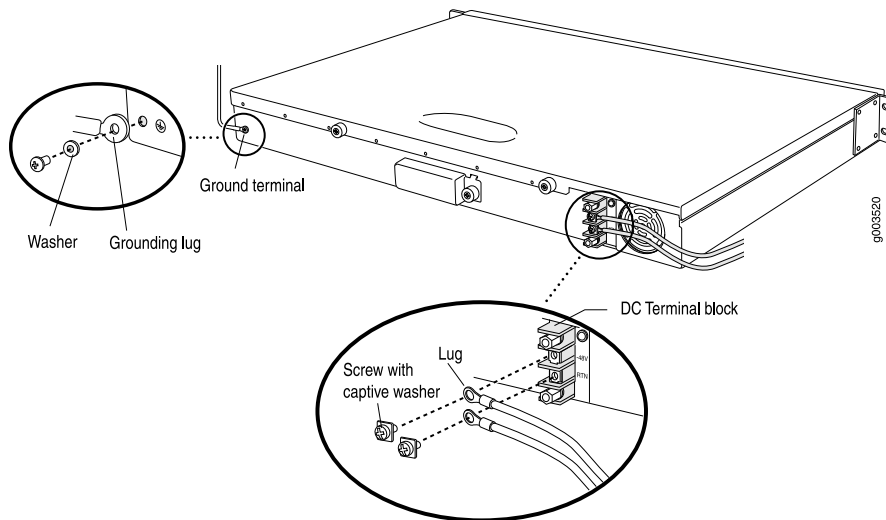
Each screw contains a captive washer to secure a DC source power cable lug to the terminal block.

- e. Using one of the removed screws, secure the positive (+) DC source power cable lug to the **RTN** terminal. Tighten the screw until snug. Do not overtighten. Apply between 8 lb-in. (0.9 Nm) and 9 lb-in. (1.02 Nm) of torque to the screw.
- f. Using the other removed screw, secure the negative (–) DC source power cable lug to the **–48 VDC** terminal. Tighten the screw until snug. Do not

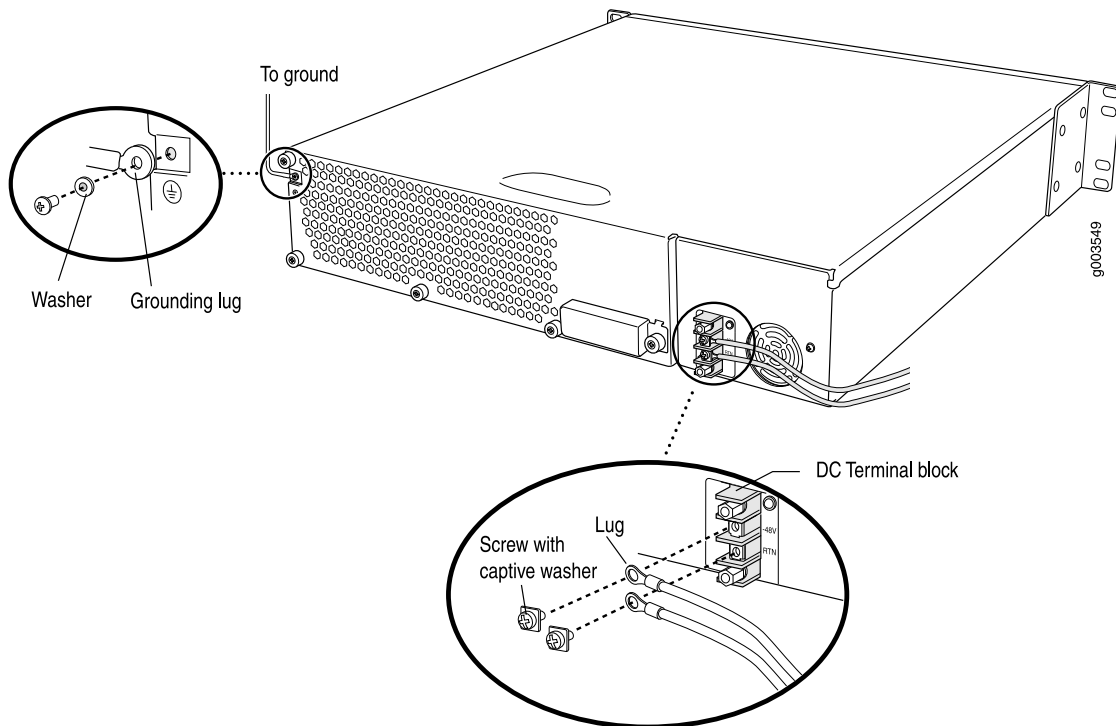
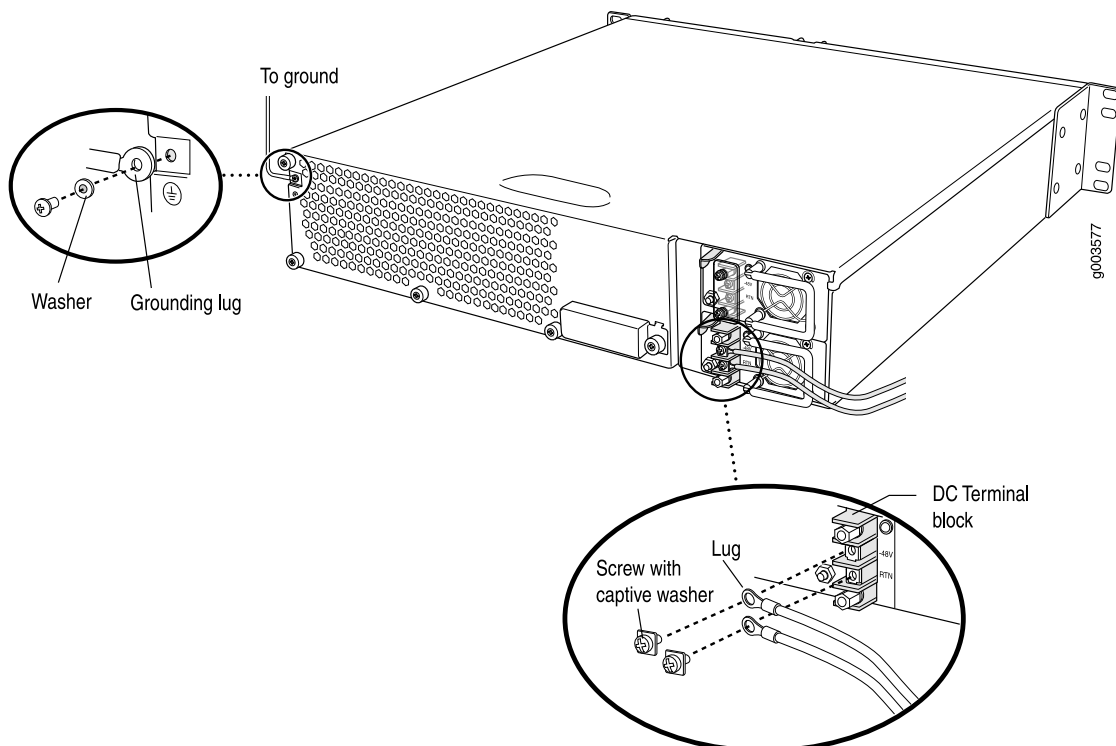
overtighten. Apply between 8 lb-in. (0.9 Nm) and 9 lb-in. (1.02 Nm) of torque to the screw.

- g. Dress the power cables appropriately.
  - h. Replace the clear plastic cover over the terminal block.
4. Verify that the power cables do not block access to router components or drape where people can trip on them.

**Figure 47: Connecting DC Power to the J2300 Services Router**





**Figure 48: Connecting DC Power to the J4300 Services Router****Figure 49: Connecting DC Power to the J6300 Services Router**

## Powering a Services Router On and Off

---

To power on a Services Router, press the power button. The Routing Engine boots as the power supply completes its startup sequence. The **POWER** LED lights during startup and remains on steadily when the router is operating normally.

To power off a Services Router, you can shut it down in one of the following ways:

- Graceful shutdown—Press and release the power button. The router begins gracefully shutting down the operating system and then powers itself off.
- Immediate shutdown—Press the power button and hold it for more than 5 seconds. The router immediately powers itself off without shutting down the operating system.

To remove power completely from the router, unplug the AC power cord or switch off the DC power source. The power button on the Services Router is a standby power switch. If the router is connected to a power source when you press the power button to power the router off, the router remains in standby mode and a small amount (5 V and 3.3 V) of standby voltage is still available in the chassis.

## Chapter 7

# Establishing Basic Connectivity

The JUNOS software is preinstalled on the Services Router. When the router is powered on, it is ready to be configured. If the router does not have a configuration from the factory or your service provider, you must configure the software to establish basic connectivity.

If you are setting up a Services Router for the first time, you can use either J-Web Quick Configuration or a configuration editor to configure basic connectivity. For a brief explanation of J-Web Quick Configuration and the J-Web and CLI configuration editors, see “Services Router User Interface Overview” on page 61.

If you are setting up many Services Routers, autoinstallation can help automate the configuration process. For more information about autoinstallation, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

This chapter contains the following topics. For more information about basic connectivity, see the *JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide*.

- Basic Connectivity Terms on page 103
- Basic Connectivity Overview on page 104
- Before You Begin on page 108
- Connecting to a Services Router on page 109
- Configuring Basic Settings with J-Web Quick Configuration on page 115
- Configuring Basic Settings with a Configuration Editor on page 118
- Verifying Basic Connectivity on page 121

## Basic Connectivity Terms

Before configuring basic connectivity, become familiar with the terms defined in Table 45 on page 103.

**Table 45: Basic Connectivity Terms**

Term	Definition
domain name	Name that identifies the network or subnetwork of a router.

**Table 45: Basic Connectivity Terms** *(continued)*

Term	Definition
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	Protocol for assigning dynamic IP addresses to devices on a network.
gateway	Packets destined for IP addresses not identified in the routing table are sent to the default gateway.
hostname	Unique name that identifies a router on the network.
loopback address	IP address of a Services Router on logical interface lo0.0 that is always active and available to external hosts and as the source address for outgoing packets.
Network Time Protocol (NTP)	Protocol that provides a reliable way of synchronizing the system time of a router.
root user	A superuser or system administrator who can perform any task in the file system.
secure shell (SSH)	Protocol that provides a secured method of logging in to a remote network system.
Telnet	Software that allows a computer to act as a remote terminal on a network system.

## Basic Connectivity Overview

To connect your Services Router to the network and establish basic connectivity, you enter information about your network. This overview contains the following topics:

- Router Identification on page 104
- Root Password on page 105
- Time Zone and System Time on page 105
- Network Settings on page 106
- Default Gateway on page 106
- Backup Router on page 106
- Loopback Address on page 106
- Built-In Ethernet Interface Address on page 107
- Management Access on page 107

### Router Identification

The domain name defines the network or subnetwork that the Services Router belongs to. The hostname refers to the specific machine, while the domain name is shared

among all the devices in a given network. Together the hostname and domain name identify the router in the network.

## **Root Password**

The root user has complete privileges to configure the Services Router, and manage files in the router's file system. Initially, the root password is not defined on the router. To ensure basic security, you must define the root password during initial configuration. If a root password is not defined, you cannot commit configuration settings to take effect on the router.

If you use a plain-text password, the router displays the password as a encrypted string so that users viewing the configuration cannot easily see the password.

The root password must meet the following conditions:

- The password must be at least 6 characters long.
- You can include most character classes in a password (alphabetic, numeric, and special characters), except control characters.
- Valid passwords must contain at least one change of case or character class.

For Common Criteria environments only, the password must be between 10 and 20 characters long and must include at least three of the five character classes (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, punctuation marks, numbers, and other special characters). Control characters are not recommended. For more information, see the *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*.

## **Time Zone and System Time**

You define the time zone for the location where you plan to operate the Services Router by using a designation that consists of the following information for the location:

- Name of the continent or ocean—For example, **America** or **Atlantic**
- Name of the major city or other geographic feature in the time zone—For example, **Detroit** or **Azores**

A Network Time Protocol (NTP) server provides accurate time across a network. The router synchronizes the system time with the NTP server, and periodically accesses the NTP server to maintain the correct time.

The time zone and system time must be accurate so that the router schedules events and operations as expected.

For Common Criteria compliance, you must configure NTP to provide accurate timestamps for system log messages. For more information, see the *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*.

## Network Settings

A Domain Name System (DNS) server on the network maintains a database for resolving hostnames and IP addresses. Network devices can query the DNS server by hostnames rather than IP addresses. The router accesses the DNS servers that are added to the configuration to resolve hostnames in the order in which you list them.

If you plan to include your router in several domains, you can add these domains to the configuration so that they are included in a DNS search. When DNS searches are requested, the domain suffixes are appended to the hostnames.

## Default Gateway

A default gateway is a static route that is used to direct packets addressed to networks not explicitly listed in the routing table. If a packet arrives at the Services Router with an address that the router does not have routing information for, the router sends the packet to the default gateway. The default gateway entry is always present in the routing and forwarding tables.

## Backup Router

You can specify a backup router to take over when the routing protocol process of the Services Router is not running, usually when the Services Router is booting, or if its routing protocol process has failed. Packets arriving at a Services Router in this situation are routed to the backup router. When the routing protocol process starts up again, the address of the backup router is removed from the routing and forwarding tables of the Services Router. The backup router must be located on the same subnet.



**NOTE:** To configure a backup router, you must use the CLI or J-Web configuration editor. You cannot configure a backup router with J-Web Quick Configuration.

---

## Loopback Address

The loopback address is the IP address of the Services Router. The loopback address ensures that the Services Router provides an IP address to management applications. Because it must always be available to hosts attempting to route packets to the Services Router, the loopback address resides on an interface that is always active, known as the loopback interface (lo0.0). Setting a loopback address ensures that the Services Router can receive packets addressed to the loopback address as long as the router is reachable through any entry (ingress) interface. In addition, applications such as NTP, RADIUS, and TACACS+ can use the loopback address as the source address for outgoing packets.

If you use the J-Web Set Up Quick Configuration page, you can either set a loopback address of your choice or have the loopback address automatically set to 127.0.0.1 when you click **Apply** or **OK** to commit the configuration.

## Built-In Ethernet Interface Address

The built-in Fast Ethernet interfaces, **fe-0/0/0** and **fe-0/0/1**, on the front panel of the Services Router, are the interfaces through which you perform initial router setup. The examples in this guide use the **fe-0/0/0** interface as the management interface, but you can use any built-in Ethernet port for management. After the initial configuration is complete, you can attach the built-in Ethernet port that you are using for management purposes to the management network.

Before initial configuration, when the factory default configuration is active, the Services Router attempts to perform autoinstallation by obtaining a router configuration through all its connected interfaces, including **fe-0/0/0**. The Services Router acts as a DHCP client out the built-in Ethernet interfaces.

If the Services Router does not find a DHCP server within a few seconds, it sets the address of **fe-0/0/0** to **192.168.1.1/24** and becomes a DHCP server out the **fe-0/0/0** interface.



**NOTE:** If the **fe-0/0/1** interface is being used, it is set to **192.168.2.1/24**.

---

With the router temporarily acting as a DHCP server, you can manually configure it with the J-Web interface. Any DHCP client host, for example, a PC or laptop computer, directly connected to **fe-0/0/0** receives an address on the **192.168.1.1/24** network.



**NOTE:** The DHCP functionality for initial setup is different from the configurable DHCP server functionality of the Services Router during operation. To configure the Services Router as a DHCP server, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

---

Once you connect your laptop or PC to **fe-0/0/0**, you can use a Web browser to visit the address **192.168.1.1/24**, access the J-Web Set Up Quick Configuration page, and complete the initial configuration of the router.

After you perform the initial configuration and commit it by clicking **Apply** or **OK** on the Set Up page, the configured router can no longer act as a DHCP server. Therefore, in order to continue using it as a management interface you should configure the IP address of the interface as part of the initial configuration.

## Management Access

Telnet allows you to connect to the Services Router and access the CLI to execute commands from a remote system. Telnet connections are not encrypted and therefore can be intercepted.

Telnet access to the root user is prohibited. You must use more secure methods, such as SSH, to log in as **root**.

If you are using a JUNOScript server to configure and monitor routers, you can activate clear-text access on the router to allow unencrypted text to be sent directly over a

TCP connection without using any additional protocol (such as SSH, SSL, or Telnet). Information sent in clear text is not encrypted and therefore can be intercepted. For more information about the JUNOScript application programming interface (API), see the *JUNOScript API Guide*.

If the router is operating in a Common Criteria environment, see the *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*.

SSH also allows you to connect to the router and access the CLI to execute commands from a remote system. However, unlike Telnet, SSH encrypts traffic so that it cannot be intercepted.

SSH can be configured so that connections are authenticated by a digital certificate. SSH uses public-private key technology for both connection and authentication. The SSH client software must be installed on the machine where the client application runs. If the SSH private key is encrypted (for greater security), the SSH client must be able to access the passphrase used to decrypt the key.

For information about obtaining SSH software, see <http://www.ssh.com> and <http://www.openssh.com>.

## Before You Begin

---

Before you begin initial configuration, complete the following tasks:

- Install the Services Router in its permanent location, as described in “Installing and Connecting a Services Router” on page 89.
- Gather the following information:
  - Hostname for the router on the network
  - Domain that the router belongs to on the network
  - Password for the root user
  - Time zone where the router is located
  - IP address of an NTP server (if NTP is used to set the time on the router)
  - IP address of a DNS server
  - List of domains that can be appended to hostnames for DNS resolution
  - IP address of the default gateway
  - IP address to be used for the loopback interface
  - IP address of the built-in Ethernet interface that you will use for management purposes. The examples in this guide use the **fe-0/0/0** interface.
- If you are performing the initial configuration with the J-Web interface, collect the following equipment:
  - A management device, such as a laptop, with an Ethernet port



- An Ethernet cable
- If you are performing the initial configuration with the CLI, collect the following equipment:
  - A management device, such as a PC or laptop, with a serial port and an asynchronous terminal application (such as Microsoft Windows Hyperterminal)
  - An RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter (provided)
  - A Ethernet cable (provided)
  - For a remote connection, two dial-up modems
  - For a remote modem connection, a DB-9 female to DB-25 male adapter, or other adapter appropriate for your modem (not provided)

## Connecting to a Services Router

---

You can connect to the Services Router using the J-Web or CLI interface.

This section contains the following topics:

- Connecting to the J-Web Interface on page 109
- Connecting to the CLI Locally on page 111
- Connecting to the CLI Remotely on page 113

### Connecting to the J-Web Interface

If you plan to use the J-Web interface to configure the Services Router, you must connect through one of the built-in Ethernet management ports, as shown in Figure 50 on page 110 and Figure 51 on page 111.

When the Services Router is powered on for the first time, the system looks for a DHCP server, and if it does not find one, it assigns an IP address within the 192.168.1.0/24 subnetwork to any devices connected to it.

To connect to the J-Web interface through port 0 on the router (see Figure 50 on page 110 and Figure 51 on page 111):

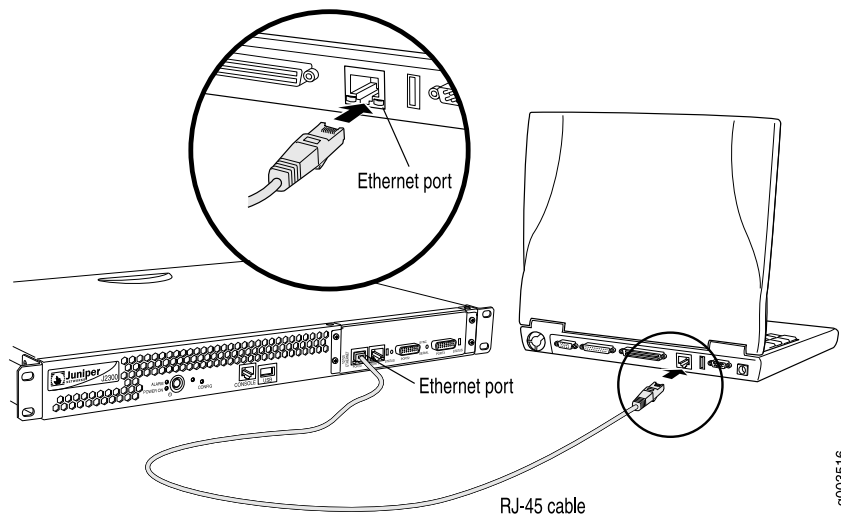
1. On the management device, such as a PC or laptop, you use to access the J-Web interface, verify that the address of the port that you connect to the router is set to one of the following:
  - An Ethernet address on the 192.168.1/24 subnetwork other than 192.168.1.1
  - An Ethernet address from a DHCP server
2. Turn off the power to the management device.
3. Plug one end of the Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the management device.

4. Connect the other end of the Ethernet cable to the built-in Ethernet port on the router.
5. Power on the router by pressing the power button on the front panel.
6. Wait until the **STATUS** LED on the front panel turns solid green.
7. Turn on the power to the management device. The router assigns an IP address to the management device within the **192.168.1.0/24** subnetwork if the device is configured to use DHCP.
8. From the management device, open a Web browser and enter the IP address **192.168.1.1** in the address field. The Set Up Quick Configuration page appears.
9. Configure basic settings for your router as described in “Configuring Basic Settings with J-Web Quick Configuration” on page 115.

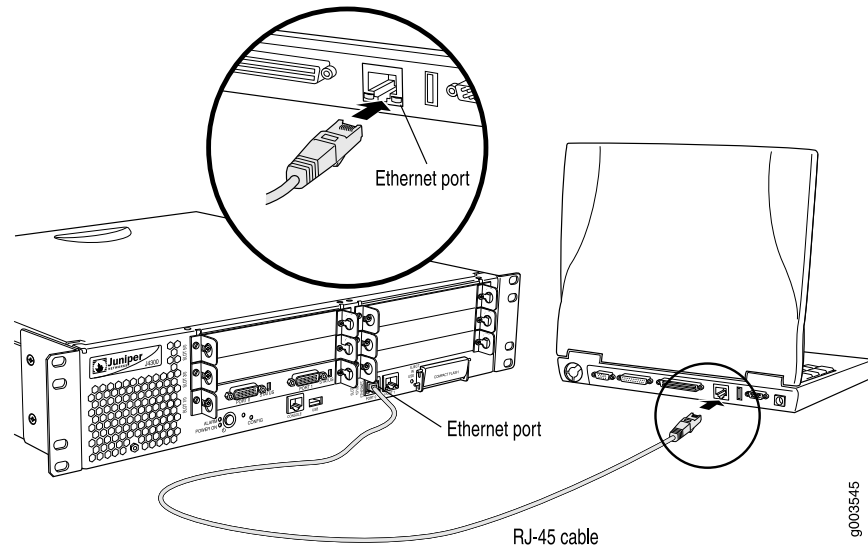


**NOTE:** You must manually configure the IP address for the management port you are using before you save your initial configuration. When you save the configuration for the first time, you will lose the connection to the router if you have not manually configured the IP address. If you lose connection through the management interface, you must connect through the console port.

**Figure 50: Connecting to the Fast Ethernet Port on the J2300 Services Router**



**Figure 51: Connecting to the Fast Ethernet Port on the J4300 or J6300 Services Router**



### Connecting to the CLI Locally

If you plan to use the CLI to configure the router, you must connect through the console port, as shown in Figure 52 on page 112 and Figure 53 on page 113.



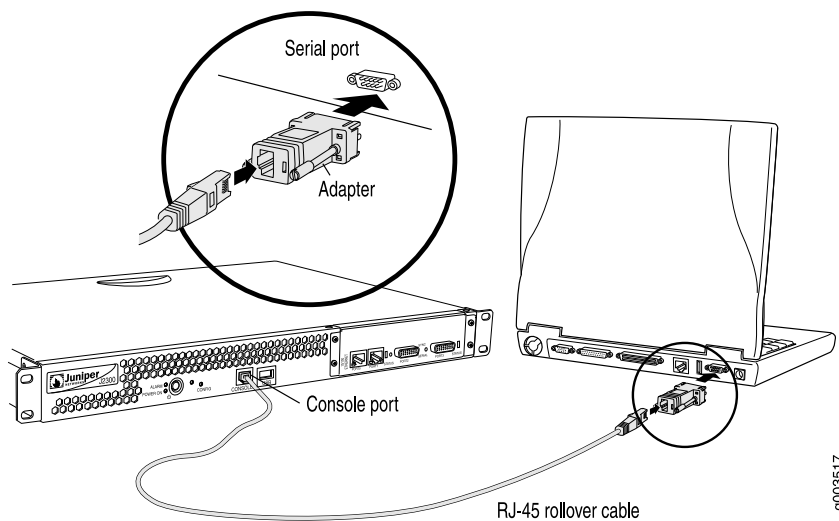
**NOTE:** Figure 52 on page 112 and Figure 53 on page 113 show a connection to a local management device. A remote connection to the router through a modem requires the cable and connector shown (provided in the router's accessory box), plus a DB-9 female to DB-25 male (or similar) adapter for your modem, which you must purchase separately.

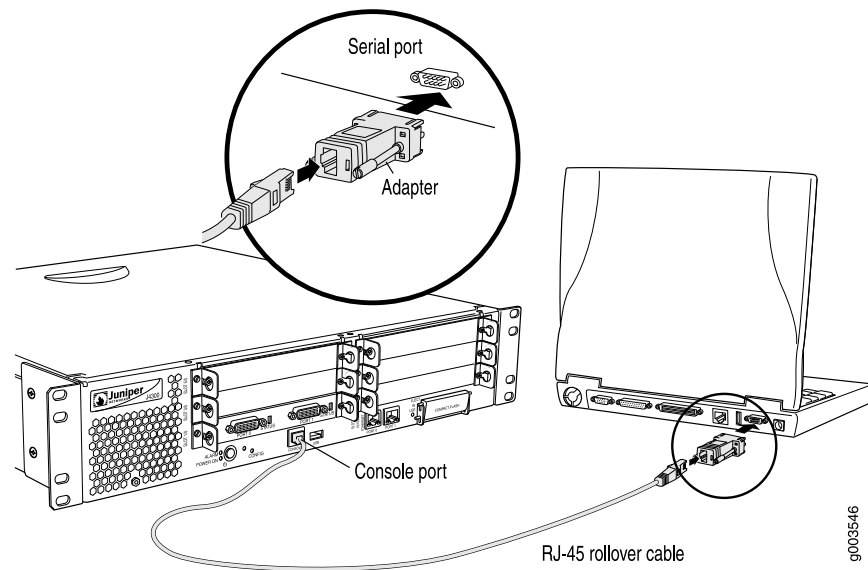
To connect to the CLI using a local management device through the console port on the router:

1. Turn off power to the router.
2. Turn off the power to the management device, such as a PC or laptop computer, that you are using to access the CLI.
3. Plug one end of the Ethernet cable supplied with your router into the RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter supplied with your router (see Figure 52 on page 112 and Figure 53 on page 113).
4. Plug the RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter into the serial port on the management device (see Figure 52 on page 112 and Figure 53 on page 113).
5. Connect the other end of the Ethernet cable to the console port on the router (Figure 52 on page 112 and Figure 53 on page 113).
6. Turn on the power to the management device.

7. Start your asynchronous terminal emulation application (such as Microsoft Windows Hyperterminal) and select the appropriate COM port to use (for example, COM1).
  8. Configure the port settings as follows:
    - Bits per second: 9600
    - Data bits: 8
    - Parity: None
    - Stop bits: 1
    - Flow control: None
  9. Power on the router by pressing the power button on the front panel. Verify that the **POWER LED** on the front panel turns green.
- The terminal emulation screen on your management device displays the boot sequence. When the router has finished booting, a login prompt appears.
10. Log in as the user “root”. No password is required at initial connection, but you must assign a root password before committing any configuration settings.

**Figure 52: Connecting to the Console Port on the J2300 Services Router**



**Figure 53: Connecting to the Console Port on the J4300 or J6300 Services Router**

### Connecting to the CLI Remotely

You can connect to the CLI from a remote location through two dial-up modems: a modem that is connected to the console port on the Services Router and a second modem connected to a remote management device. The modem connection allows you to remotely perform the same console operations you can perform locally.

This section contains the following topics:

- Configuring the Modem at the Router End on page 113
- Connecting the Modem to the Console Port on page 114
- Connecting to the CLI at the User End on page 115

### Configuring the Modem at the Router End



**NOTE:** These instructions use Hayes-compatible modem commands to configure the modem. If your modem is not Hayes-compatible, refer to the documentation for your modem and enter equivalent modem commands.

Before you can connect a dial-up modem to the console port on the Services Router, you must configure the modem to accept a call on the first ring and accept Data Terminal Ready (DTR) signals. You must also disable flow control on the modem.

To configure the modem on the router end:

1. Connect the modem to a PC or laptop computer.
2. Power on the modem.

3. From the PC or laptop computer, start your asynchronous terminal emulation application (such as Microsoft Windows Hyperterminal) and select the COM port to which the modem is connected (for example, COM1).
  4. Configure the port settings as follows:
    - Bits per second: 9600
    - Data bits: 8
    - Parity: None
    - Stop bits: 1
    - Flow control: None
  5. In the HyperTerminal window, enter AT.
- An OK response verifies that the modem communicates successfully with the COM port on the PC or laptop.
6. To configure the modem to answer a call on the first ring, enter ATSO=1.
  7. To configure the modem to accept modem control Data Terminal Ready (DTR) signals, enter AT&D1.
  8. To disable flow control, enter AT&K0.
  9. To save modem settings, enter AT&W.

### Connecting the Modem to the Console Port



**NOTE:** Most modems have an RS-232 DB-25 connector. You must separately purchase an adapter to connect your modem to the RJ-45 to DB-9 adapter and Ethernet cable supplied with the router.

To connect the dial-up modem to the console port on the router:

1. Turn off power to the router.
2. Turn off the power to the modem.
3. Plug one end of the Ethernet cable supplied with your router into the console port on the router.
4. Plug the other end of the Ethernet cable into the RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter supplied with your router.
5. Connect the serial port adapter to a separately purchased DB-9 female to DB-25 male adapter, or other adapter appropriate for your modem.
6. Plug the modem adapter into the DB-25 connector on the modem.
7. Connect the modem to your telephone network.
8. Turn on the power to the modem.
9. Power on the router by pressing the power button on the front panel. Verify that the POWER LED on the front panel turns green.

## Connecting to the CLI at the User End

To remotely connect to the CLI through a dial-up modem connected to the console port on the router:

1. At your remote location, connect a modem to a management device such as a PC or laptop computer.
2. On the PC or laptop computer, start your asynchronous terminal emulation application (such as Microsoft Windows Hyperterminal).
3. Select the **COM** port to which the modem is connected (for example, **COM1**).
4. Configure the port settings as follows:
  - Bits per second: 9600
  - Data bits: 8
  - Parity: None
  - Stop bits: 1
  - Flow control: None
5. In the HyperTerminal window, enter **AT**.

An **OK** response verifies that the modem communicates successfully with the COM port on the PC or laptop.

6. To dial the modem that is connected to the console port on the router, enter **ATDT remote-modem-number**. For example, if the number of the modem connected to the console port on the router is 0013033033030, enter **ATDT 0013033033030**.

The router login prompt appears.

7. Log in as the user “root”. No password is required at initial connection, but you must assign a root password before committing any configuration settings.

## Configuring Basic Settings with J-Web Quick Configuration

---

J-Web Quick Configuration allows you to configure basic settings. Figure 36 on page 65 shows the Quick Configuration page for basic setup.

Before you configure the router, gather the information described in “Before You Begin” on page 108.

To configure basic settings with J-Web Quick Configuration:

1. If you have not already done so, connect a management device to the **fe-0/0/0** interface on port 0. For instructions, see “Connecting to the J-Web Interface” on page 109.
2. If the Set Up Quick Configuration page is not displayed, select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Set Up**.
3. Enter information into the Set Up Quick Configuration page, as described in Table 46 on page 116.

4. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay in the Set Up Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the Quick Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the Quick Configuration page, click **Cancel**.



**NOTE:** After initial configuration is complete, the Services Router stops functioning as a DHCP server. If you change the IP address of **fe-0/0/0** and have the management device configured to use DHCP, you lose your DHCP lease and your connection to the router through the J-Web interface. To reestablish a connection, either set the IP address on the management device manually, or connect **fe-0/0/0** to the management network and access the router another way—for example, through the console port.

5. To check the configuration, see Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations on page 121.

**Table 46: Set Up Quick Configuration Summary**

Field	Function	Your Action
<b>Identification</b>		
Host Name (required)	Defines the hostname of the router.	Type the hostname.
Domain Name	Defines the network or subnetwork that the machine belongs to.	Type the domain name.
Root Password (required)	Sets the root password that user “root” can use to log in to the router.	Type a plain-text password that the system encrypts.  <b>NOTE:</b> After a root password has been defined, it is required when you log in to the J-Web user interface or the CLI.
Verify Root Password (required)	Verifies the root password has been typed correctly.	Retype the password.
<b>Time</b>		
Time Zone	Identifies the time zone that the router is located in.	From the list, select the appropriate time zone.
NTP Servers	Specify an NTP server that the router can reach to synchronize the system time.	To add an IP address, type it in the box to the left of the Add button, then click <b>Add</b> .  To delete an IP address, click on it in the box above the Add button, then click <b>Delete</b> .



**Table 46: Set Up Quick Configuration Summary** (continued)

Field	Function	Your Action
Current System Time	Synchronizes the system time with the NTP server, or manually set the system time and date.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To immediately set the time using the NTP server, click <b>Set Time via NTP</b>. The router sends a request to the NTP server and synchronizes the system time.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If you are configuring other settings on this page, the router also synchronizes the system time using the NTP server when you click <b>Apply</b> or <b>OK</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the time manually, click <b>Set Time Manually</b>. A pop-up window allows you to select the current date and time from lists.</li> </ul>
<b>Network</b>		
DNS Name Servers	Specify a DNS server that the router can use to resolve hostnames into addresses.	<p>To add an IP address, type it in the box to the left of the Add button, then click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>To delete an IP address, click on it in the box above the Add button, then click <b>Delete</b>.</p>
Domain Search	Adds each domain name that the router is included in to the configuration so that they are included in a DNS search.	<p>To add a domain name, type it in the box to the left of the Add button, then click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>To delete a domain name, click on it in the box above the Add button, then click <b>Delete</b>.</p>
Default Gateway	Defines a default gateway through which to direct packets addressed to networks not explicitly listed in the routing table.	Type a 32-bit IP address, in dotted decimal notation.
Loopback Address	Defines a reserved IP address that is always available on the router. If no address is entered, this address is set to 127.0.0.1/32.	Type a 32-bit IP address and prefix length, in dotted decimal notation.
fe-0/0/0 Address	Defines the IP address and prefix length of fe-0/0/0. The interface fe-0/0/0 is typically used as the management interface for accessing the router. The DHCP client sets this address to 192.168.1.1/24 if no DHCP server is found.	<p>Type a 32-bit IP address and prefix length, in dotted decimal notation.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You must enter the fe-0/0/0 address on the Quick Configuration Set Up page before you click <b>Apply</b> or <b>OK</b>. If you do not manually configure this address, you will lose your connection to the J-Web interface when you click <b>Apply</b> or <b>OK</b>.</p>
<b>Management Access</b>		
Allow Telnet Access	Allows remote access to the router using Telnet.	To enable Telnet access, select the check box.
Allow JUNOScript over Clear-Text Access	Allows JUNOScript to access the router using a protocol for sending unencrypted text over a TCP connection.	To enable JUNOScript access over clear text, select the check box.
Allow SSH Access	Allows remote access to the router using SSH.	To enable SSH access, select the check box.

## Configuring Basic Settings with a Configuration Editor

To establish basic connectivity on a Services Router, you identify the router, connect the router to the network, and specify basic network settings.

In a typical network, the Services Router has the basic settings listed in Table 47 on page 118. Determine the values to set on the Services Router in your network.

**Table 47: Sample Settings on a Services Router**

Services Router Property	Sample Value
Services Router hostname	routera
Access for user “root”	SSH RSA public key
IP address of the NTP server used to synchronize system time on the Services Router	10.148.2.21
Services Router location	Sunnyvale, California, USA, which is in the America/Los_Angeles time zone
IP address of the DNS server to which DNS requests are sent	10.148.2.32
Domains to which the Services Router belongs	lab.router.net and router.net
IP address of a backup router to use while the Services Router is booting or if the routing protocol processes fail to start	192.168.2.12/24
Loopback IP address and prefix length for the Services Router lo0 interface	172.16.1.24/32
IP address and prefix length for the Services Router fe-0/0/0 interface	192.168.1.1/24

You can configure basic settings in the J-Web interface from a device attached to the fe-0/0/0 interface on port 0. For instructions, see “Connecting to the J-Web Interface” on page 109. You can also connect to the CLI to configure basic settings. For instructions, see “Connecting to the CLI Locally” on page 111 and “Connecting to the CLI Remotely” on page 113.

To use a configuration editor to configure basic settings:

1. Navigate to the top of the configuration hierarchy in either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.
2. To configure basic settings, perform the configuration tasks described in Table 48 on page 119.

3. If you are using the J-Web interface, click **Commit** to view a summary of your changes, then click **OK** to commit the configuration. If you are using the CLI, commit the configuration by entering the `commit` command.
4. To check the configuration, see Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations on page 121.

**Table 48: Configuring Basic Settings**

Task	J-Web Configuration Editor	CLI Configuration Editor
Navigate to the <b>System</b> level in the configuration hierarchy.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the J-Web interface, select <b>Configuration &gt; View and Edit &gt; Edit Configuration</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to System, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> </ol>	<p>From the [edit] hierarchy level, enter</p> <p><code>edit system</code></p>
Define the hostname of the router.	In the Host name box, type the hostname of the router—for example, <code>routera</code> .	<p>Set the hostname. For example:</p> <p><code>set host-name routera</code></p>
Name the domain in which the router is located.	In the Domain name box, type the domain name of the router—for example, <code>lab.router.net</code> .	<p>Set the domain name. For example:</p> <p><code>set domain-name lab.router.net</code></p>
Allow SSH remote access.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the Nested configuration section, next to Services, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to Ssh, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>4. Click <b>OK</b> a second time to return to the System level in the configuration editor hierarchy.</li> </ol>	<p>Set remote access for SSH:</p> <p><code>set services ssh</code></p>
Define root authentication for access to the router.  <b>NOTE:</b> For readability, the entire key is not shown.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the Nested configuration section, next to Root authentication, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to Ssh rsa, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Authorized key box, type the RSA password—for example, <code>ssh-rsa AAAAB3Nza...D9Y2gXF9ac==root@routera.lab.router.net</code></li> <li>4. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5. Click <b>OK</b> a second time to return to the System level in the configuration editor hierarchy.</li> </ol>	<p>Set the root password. For example:</p> <p><code>set root-authentication ssh-rsa "ssh-rsa AAAAB3Nza...D9Y2gXF9ac==root@routera.lab.router.net"</code></p>
Define the time zone the router is located in.	In the Time zone list, select the time zone for your router—for example, <b>America/Los_Angeles</b> .	<p>Set the time zone. For example:</p> <p><code>set time-zone America/Los_Angeles</code></p>

**Table 48: Configuring Basic Settings** (continued)

Task	J-Web Configuration Editor	CLI Configuration Editor
Define the NTP server that NTP requests can be sent to.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the Nested configuration section, next to Ntp, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to Server, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Address box, type the NTP server's IP address—for example, 10.148.2.21</li> <li>4. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5. Click <b>OK</b> a second time to return to the System level in the configuration editor hierarchy.</li> </ol>	<p>Set the address of the NTP server. For example:</p> <pre>set ntp server 10.148.2.21</pre>
Define the DNS server that receives DNS requests.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Next to Name server, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>2. In the Address box, type the address of the DNS server—for example, 10.148.2.32.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<p>Set the address of the DNS server. For example:</p> <pre>set name-server 10.148.2.32</pre>
Add each domain that the router belongs to.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Next to Domain search, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>2. In the Value box, type the name of the domain in which the router is located—for example, lab.router.net.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>4. Next to Domain search, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>5. In the Value box, type the name of another domain that the router belongs to—for example, router.net.</li> <li>6. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<p>Set the domains to be searched. For example:</p> <pre>set domain-search lab.router.net</pre> <pre>set domain-search router.net</pre>
Define the backup router to be used when the router is booting or the routing protocol processes are not running.	In the Backup router section, next to Address, type the IP address of the backup router—for example, 192.168.2.44.	<p>Set the address for the backup router. For example:</p> <pre>set backup router address 192.168.2.44</pre>
Define the IP address for lo0.0.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the configuration editor hierarchy, next to Interfaces, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. In the Interface table, locate the lo0 row and click <b>Unit</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Unit table, click <b>0</b>, and in the Family section next to Inet, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>4. To delete the existing IP address, click the <b>Discard</b> button. Select the <b>Delete Configuration Below This Point</b> option button from the next display.</li> <li>5. Next to Address, click <b>Add new entry</b>.</li> <li>6. In the Source box, type the address and prefix length for the loopback interface—for example, 172.16.1.24/32.</li> <li>7. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the [edit] hierarchy level, enter <pre>edit interfaces</pre> </li> <li>2. Delete the existing IP address: <pre>delete lo0 unit 0 family inet address</pre> </li> <li>3. Set the IP address and prefix length of lo0.0. For example: <pre>set lo0 unit 0 family inet address 172.16.1.24/32</pre> </li> </ol>

**Table 48: Configuring Basic Settings** (continued)

Task	J-Web Configuration Editor	CLI Configuration Editor
Define the IP address for fe-0/0/0.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the configuration editor hierarchy, next to Interfaces, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. In the Interface table, locate the fe-0/0/0 row and click <b>Unit</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Unit table, click <b>0</b>, and in the Family section next to Inet, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>4. To delete the existing IP address, click the <b>Discard</b> button. Select the <b>Delete Configuration Below This Point</b> option button from the next display.</li> <li>5. Next to Address, click <b>Add new entry</b>.</li> <li>6. In the Source box, type the address and prefix length for the management interface—for example, 192.168.1.1/24.</li> <li>7. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Delete the existing IP address:  delete fe-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address.</li> <li>2. Set the IP address and prefix length of fe-0/0/0. For example:  set fe-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 192.168.1.1/24</li> </ol>

## Verifying Basic Connectivity

To verify that the Services Router has the settings you configured, perform the following task.

### Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations

**Purpose** Verify the configuration of basic connectivity. Because the basic connectivity settings appear in different places in the configuration hierarchy, displaying the entire configuration at once makes viewing the settings easier.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Configuration > View and Edit > View Configuration Text**. Alternatively, from configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show** command. The following sample output displays the sample values configured in Table 48 on page 119. Your output displays the values you set.

```
system {
  host-name routera;
  domain-name lab.router.net;
  domain-search [ lab.router.net router.net ];
  backup-router 192.168.2.44;
  time-zone America/Los_Angeles;
  root-authentication {
    ssh-rsa "ssh-rsa AAAAB3Nza...D9Y2gXF9ac==root@routera.lab.router.net";
  }
  name-server {
    10.148.2.32;
  }
  services {
  }
```

```
ntp {  
  server 10.148.2.21;  
}  
}  
interfaces {  
  fe-0/0/0 {  
    unit 0 {  
      family inet {  
        address 192.168.1.1/24;  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}  
lo0 {  
  unit 0 {  
    family inet {  
      address 172.16.1.24/32;  
    }  
  }  
}  
}
```

**What It Means** The output shows the configuration of basic connectivity. Verify that the values displayed are correct for your Services Router. For more information about the format of a configuration file, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

## Chapter 8

# Configuring Secure Web Access

You can manage a Services Router remotely through the J-Web interface. To communicate with the Services Router, the J-Web interface uses Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP). HTTP allows easy Web access but no encryption. The data that is transmitted between the Web browser and the router by means of HTTP is vulnerable to interception and attack. To enable secure Web access, a Services Router supports Hypertext Transfer Protocol over Secure Sockets Layer (HTTPS). You can enable HTTP or HTTPS access on specific interfaces and ports as needed.

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration, the J-Web configuration editor, or the CLI configuration editor to configure secure Web access.

This chapter contains the following topics. For more information about the J-Web interface, see the *J-Web Interface User Guide*.

- Secure Web Access Terms on page 123
- Secure Web Access Overview on page 124
- Before You Begin on page 124
- Configuring Secure Web Access on page 125
- Configuring Secure Web Access with a Configuration Editor on page 128
- Verifying Secure Web Access on page 129

## Secure Web Access Terms

Before configuring secure Web access, become familiar with the terms defined in Table 49 on page 123.

**Table 49: Secure Web Access Terms**

Term	Definition
certificate authority (CA)	Third-party organization or company that issues digital certificates used to create digital signatures and public-private key pairs. The CA guarantees the identity of the individual or device that presents the digital certificate.
Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)	Protocol used to publish and receive information on the Web, such as text and graphics files.

**Table 49: Secure Web Access Terms** *(continued)*

Term	Definition
<b>Hypertext Transfer Protocol over Secure Sockets Layer (HTTPS)</b>	Protocol similar to HTTP with an added encryption layer that encrypts and decrypts user page requests and pages that are returned by a Web server. HTTPS is used for secure communication, such as payment transactions.
<b>Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM)</b>	Technique for securely exchanging electronic mail over a public medium. PEM is based upon public key infrastructure (PKI) standards like X.509 certificates. SSL certificates are partly based on PEM and end in the suffix <code>.pem</code> .
<b>RSA</b>	Public key cipher that can be used for encrypting messages and making digital signatures. RSA uses a well-known encryption and authentication algorithm that is a part of popular Web browsers.
<b>Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)</b>	Protocol that encrypts security information before transmitting data across a network. SSL requires two keys to encrypt data—a public key known to everyone and a private or secret key known only to the recipient of the message—and an authentication certificate. Most popular Web browsers support SSL.
<b>SSL certificate</b>	Secure electronic identifier conforming to the X.509 standard, definitively identifying an individual, system, company, or organization. In addition to identification data, the digital certificate contains a serial number, a copy of the certificate holder's public key, the identity and digital signature of the issuing certificate authority (CA), and an expiration date.

## Secure Web Access Overview

A Services Router uses the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol to provide secure management of Services Routers through the Web interface. SSL uses public-private key technology that requires a paired private key and an authentication certificate for providing the SSL service. SSL encrypts communication between your router and the Web browser with a session key negotiated by the SSL server certificate.

An SSL certificate includes identifying information such as a public key and a signature made by a certificate authority (CA). When you access the router through HTTPS, an SSL handshake authenticates the server and the client and begins a secure session. If the information does not match or the certificate has expired, you are not able to access the router through HTTPS.

Without SSL encryption, communication between your router and the browser is sent in the open and can be intercepted. We recommend that you enable HTTPS access on your WAN interfaces.

On J-series Services Routers, HTTP access is enabled by default on the built-in management interfaces. By default, HTTPS access is supported on any interface with an SSL server certificate.

## Before You Begin

Before you begin initial configuration, complete the following tasks:

- Establish basic connectivity. See “Establishing Basic Connectivity” on page 103.



- Obtain an SSL certificate from a trusted signing authority. See “Generating SSL Certificates” on page 125.

## Generating SSL Certificates

To enable secure Web access, you must first generate a digital SSL certificate, and then enable HTTPS access on the Services Router.

To generate an SSL certificate:

1. Enter the following **openssl** command in your Secure Shell command-line interface. The **openssl** command generates a self-signed SSL certificate in the privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) format. It writes the certificate and an unencrypted 1024-bit RSA private key to the specified file.

```
% openssl req -x509 -nodes -newkey rsa:1024 -keyout filename.pem -out
filename.pem
```

Replace *filename* with the name of a file in which you want the SSL certificate to be written—for example, **new.pem**.

2. When prompted, type the appropriate information in the identification form. For example, type **US** for the country name.
3. Display the contents of the file **new.pem**.

```
cat new.pem
```

Copy the contents of this file for installing the SSL certificate.

You can use either J-Web Quick Configuration or a configuration editor to install the SSL certificate and enable HTTPS.

## Configuring Secure Web Access

---

Navigate to the Secure Access Quick Configuration page by selecting **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Secure Access**. On this page, you can enable HTTP and HTTPS access on interfaces for managing Services Routers through the Web interface. You can also install SSL certificates and enable JUNOScript over SSL with the Secure Access page.

Figure 54 on page 126 shows the Secure Access Quick Configuration page.

**Figure 54: Quick Configuration Secure Access Page**

Diagnose Manage Events **Alarms** Logged in as: regress Help About Logout

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Secure Access](#)

### Quick Configuration

#### Secure Access

---

#### Certificates

Local certificates are used in providing SSL server access.

No certificates are defined.

[Add...](#)

---

#### HTTP Web Access

HTTP access allows management of the router via the web interface. Communication between the router web server and your browser is sent in the clear (including passwords!), so it is recommended that you do disallow HTTP access from your WAN interfaces.

Enable HTTP access ☒ ?

Enable HTTP on All Interfaces ☒

HTTP-Enabled Interfaces

Logical Interfaces

fe-0/0/0.0  
lo0.0

---

#### HTTPS Web Access

HTTPS access allows secure management of the router via the web interface. Communication between the router web server and your browser is encrypted using a session key negotiated using the SSL server certificate.

Enable HTTPS access ☐ ?

HTTPS Certificate  ?

Enable HTTPS on All Interfaces ☒

HTTPS-Enabled Interfaces

Logical Interfaces

fe-0/0/0.0  
lo0.0

---

#### JUNOScript over SSL

Configuring SSL access for the JUNOScript XML scripting API access allows securely management of the router.

Enable SSL JUNOScript access ☐ ?

JUNOScript SSL Certificate  ?

To configure Web access settings in the J-Web interface:

1. Enter information into the Secure Access Quick Configuration page, as described in Table 50 on page 127.
2. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the Quick Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the Quick Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

3. To verify that Web access is enabled correctly, connect to the routing platform using one of the following methods:
  - For HTTP access—In your Web browser, type `http://URL` or `http://IP address`.
  - For HTTPS access—In your Web browser, type `https://URL` or `https://IP address`.
  - For SSL JUNOScript access—A JUNOScript client such as JUNOScope is required. For information about how to log in to JUNOScope, see the *JUNOScope Software User Guide*.
4. To verify the secure Web access configuration, see “Verifying Secure Web Access” on page 129.

**Table 50: Secure Access Quick Configuration Summary**

Field	Function	Your Action
<b>Certificates</b>		
Certificates	<p>Displays digital certificates required for SSL access to the Services Router.</p> <p>Allows you to add and delete SSL certificates.</p> <p>For information about how to generate an SSL certificate, see “Generating SSL Certificates” on page 125.</p>	<p>To add a certificate:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Add</b>. Opens the Add a Local Certificate page.</li> <li>2. Type a name in the Certificate Name box—for example, <b>new</b>.</li> <li>3. Paste the generated certificate and RSA private key in the Certificate box.</li> </ol> <p>To delete a certificate, select it and click <b>Delete</b>.</p>
<b>HTTP Web Access</b>		
Enable HTTP Access	Enables HTTP access on interfaces.	To enable HTTP access, select the <b>Enable HTTP access</b> check box.
Enable HTTP on All Interfaces	Enables HTTP access on all interfaces at one time.	To enable HTTP access on all interfaces, select the <b>Enable HTTP on All Interfaces</b> check box.
HTTP-Enabled Interfaces	Specifies interfaces on which you want to enable HTTP access.	<p>Select and deselect interfaces by clicking the direction arrows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To enable HTTP access on an interface, add the interface to the HTTP Interfaces list.</li> <li>■ To disable HTTP access on an interface, add the interface to the Logical Interfaces list.</li> </ul>
<b>HTTPS Web Access</b>		
Enable HTTPS Access	Enables HTTPS access on interfaces.	To enable HTTPS access, select the <b>Enable HTTPS access</b> check box.
HTTPS Certificate	<p>Specifies SSL certificates to be used for encryption.</p> <p>This field is available only after you have created an SSL certificate.</p>	To specify the HTTPS certificate, select a certificate from the HTTPS Certificate list—for example, <b>new</b> .

**Table 50: Secure Access Quick Configuration Summary** (continued)

Field	Function	Your Action
Enable HTTPS on All Interfaces	Enables HTTPS on all interfaces at one time.	To enable HTTPS on all interfaces, select the <b>Enable HTTPS on All Interfaces</b> check box.
HTTPS-Enabled Interfaces	Allows you to specify interfaces on which you want to enable HTTPS access.	Select and deselect interfaces by clicking the direction arrows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To enable HTTPS access on an interface, add the interface to the HTTPS Interfaces list.</li> <li>■ To disable HTTPS access on an interface, add the interface to the Logical Interfaces list.</li> </ul>
<b>JUNOScript over SSL</b>		
Enable SSL JUNOScript access	Enables secured SSL access to the JUNOScript XML scripting API.	To enable SSL access, select the <b>Enable SSL JUNOScript access</b> check box.
JUNOScript SSL Certificate	Specifies SSL certificates to be used for encryption.  This field is available only after you create at least one SSL certificate.	To enable an SSL certificate, select a certificate from the JUNOScript SSL Certificate list—for example, <b>new</b> .

## Configuring Secure Web Access with a Configuration Editor

You can manage your Services Router using a secure Web connection by enabling HTTPS.

To enable HTTPS on your Services Router:

1. Navigate to the top of the configuration hierarchy in either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.
2. Perform the configuration tasks described in Table 51 on page 128.
3. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
4. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Secure Web Access” on page 129.

**Table 51: Configuring a Secure Web Access**

Task	J-Web Configuration Editor	CLI Configuration Editor
Navigate to the <b>Security</b> level in the configuration hierarchy.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the J-Web interface, select <b>Configuration &gt; View and Edit &gt; Edit Configuration</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to Security, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> </ol>	From the [edit] hierarchy level, enter  edit security

**Table 51: Configuring a Secure Web Access** (*continued*)

Task	J-Web Configuration Editor	CLI Configuration Editor
<p>Import the SSL certificate that you have generated—for example, <b>new</b>.</p> <p>For information about generating SSL certificates, see “Generating SSL Certificates” on page 125.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next to Certificates, click <b>Configure</b>.</li> <li>Next to Local, click <b>Add new entry</b>.</li> <li>In the Name box, type a name for the certificate to be imported—for example, <b>new</b>.</li> <li>In the Certificate box, paste the generated SSL certificate and private key.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<p>Enter</p> <p><code>set certificates local new load-key-filepath</code></p> <p>Replace <i>path</i> with a path or URL to the file containing an SSL certificate and private key in PEM format—for example, <code>/var/tmp/new.pem</code></p>
<p>Enable HTTPS access and specify the SSL certificate to be used for authentication.</p> <p>Specify the port on which HTTPS access is to be enabled—for example, TCP port 8443.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You can enable HTTPS access on specified interfaces also. If you enable HTTPS without specifying an interface, HTTPS is enabled on all interfaces.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On the main Configuration page next to System, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>Select the <b>Services</b> check box and click <b>Edit</b> next to it.</li> <li>Next to Web management, click <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>Select the <b>Https</b> check box and click <b>Edit</b> next to it.</li> <li>In the Local certificate box, type the name of the certificate—for example, <b>new</b>.</li> <li>In the Port box, type <b>8443</b>.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<p>From the [edit system] hierarchy level, enter</p> <p><code>set services web-management https local-certificate new port 8443</code></p>

## Verifying Secure Web Access

To verify that the Services Router has the secure access settings you configured, perform the following tasks:

- Displaying an SSL Certificate Configuration on page 129
- Displaying a Secure Access Configuration on page 130

### Displaying an SSL Certificate Configuration

**Purpose** Display the SSL certificate configuration.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Configuration > View and Edit > View Configuration Text**. Alternatively, from configuration mode in the CLI, enter the `show security` command.

The following sample output displays an SSL certificate generated with instructions in “Generating SSL Certificates” on page 125.

```
[edit]
user@RO# show security
```

```

certificates {
  local {
    new {
      "—BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY—\nMIICXQIBAAKBgQC/C5UI4frNqbi
      qPwbTiOkJvqoDw2YgYse0Z5zzVJyErgSg954T\nEuHM67Ck8hA0rCnb0YO+SY
      Y5rCXLf4+2s8k9EypLtYRw/Ts66DZoXI4viqE7HSsK\n5sQw/UDBlw7/MJ+OpA
      ... KYiFf4CbBBbjIMQJ0HFudW6ISVBslONkzX+FT\ni95ddka6ilRnArEb4VFCRh+
      e1QBdp1UjziYf7NuzDx4Z\n —END RSA PRIVATE KEY—\n—BEGIN
      CERTIFICATE— \nMIIDjDCCAaVgAwIBAgIBADANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQQ ...
      FADCBkTElMAkGA1UEBhMCdXMx\nCzAJBgNVBAGTAmNhMRlwEAYDVQQHEwldW5ue
      HB1YnMxDTALBgNVBAMTBGpucHlxJDAiBgkqhkiG\n9w0BCQEWFW5iaGFyZ2F2YUB
      fLUYAnBYmsYWOH\n —END CERTIFICATE—\n"; ## SECRET-DATA
    }
  }
}

```

**What It Means** The output shows the intended secure access configuration. For more information about the format of a configuration file, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

## Displaying a Secure Access Configuration

**Purpose** Verify the secure access configuration.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Configuration > View and Edit > View Configuration Text**. Alternatively, from configuration mode in the CLI, enter the `show system services` command.

The following sample output displays the sample values for secure Web access as configured in Table 51 on page 128.

```

[edit]
user@R0# show system services
web-management {
  http;
  https {
    port 8443;
    local-certificate new;
  }
}

```

**What It Means** The output shows the intended secure access configuration. For more information about the format of a configuration file, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

## Chapter 9

# Installing and Managing J-series Licenses

To enable some JUNOS software features on a J-series Services Router, you must purchase, install, and manage separate software licenses. The presence on the router of the appropriate software license keys (passwords) determines the features you can configure and use.

For information about how to purchase J-series software licenses, contact your Juniper Networks sales representative.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- J-series License Overview on page 131
- Before You Begin on page 132
- Managing J-series Licenses with the J-Web Interface on page 133
- Managing J-series Licenses with the CLI on page 135
- Verifying J-series License Management on page 137

## J-series License Overview

Each J-series feature license is valid for only a single Services Router. To manage the licenses, you must understand the components of a license key.

This section contains the following topics:

- Software Feature Licenses on page 131
- License Key Components on page 132

## Software Feature Licenses

Each feature license is tied to exactly one software feature, and that license is valid for exactly one Services Router. Table 52 on page 131 lists the Services Router software features that require licenses.

**Table 52: J-series Services Router Software Feature Licenses**

Licensed Software Feature	License Name
IBM Networking	

**Table 52: J-series Services Router Software Feature Licenses** *(continued)*

Licensed Software Feature	License Name
Data link switching (DLSw) on all J-series Services Routers	J-series Services Router Software License for Data Link Switching (DLSw) Support
<b>Traffic Analysis</b>	
J-Flow traffic analysis—all configuration statements within the [edit forwarding-options sampling] and [edit forwarding-options accounting] hierarchies.	J-series Services Router Software License for J-Flow Traffic Analysis
<b>BGP Route Reflectors</b>	
Advanced Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) features that enable route reflectors—all configuration statements within the [edit protocols bgp cluster] hierarchy. BGP clusters allow routers to act as route reflectors by enabling the readvertising of BGP routes to internal peers.	J-series Services Router Software License for Advanced Border Router Protocol Support

## License Key Components

A license key consists of two parts:

- License ID—Alphanumeric string that uniquely identifies the license key. When a license is generated, it is given a license ID.
- License data—Block of binary data that defines and stores all license key objects.

For example, in the following typical license key, the string **li29183743** is the license ID, and the trailing block of data is the license data:

```
li29183743 4ky27y acasck 82fsj6 jzsn4q ix8i8d adj7kr
            8uq38t ix8i8d jzsn4q ix8i8d 4ky27y acasck
            82fsj6 ii8i7e adj7kr 8uq38t ks2923 a9382e
```

The license data defines the device ID for which the license is valid and the version of the license.

## Before You Begin

Before you begin managing the J-series licenses, complete the following tasks:

- Purchase the licenses you require.
- Establish basic connectivity. See “Establishing Basic Connectivity” on page 103.



## Managing J-series Licenses with the J-Web Interface

To manage licenses with the J-Web interface, you perform the following tasks:

- Adding New Licenses with the J-Web Interface on page 134
- Deleting Licenses with the J-Web Interface on page 135
- Displaying License Keys with the J-Web Interface on page 135
- Downloading Licenses with the J-Web Interface on page 135

Figure 55 on page 133 shows the J-Web Licenses page.

**Figure 55: Licenses Page**

**Router - J6300**

Monitor Configuration Diagnose **Manage** Events Alarms Logged in as: regress Help About Logout

Files Software **Licenses** Reboot Snapshot

**Licenses**

**Feature Summary**

Feature	Licenses Used	Licenses Installed	Licenses Needed
J-FLOW traffic analysis (CFLOW reporting)	0	1	0
Border Gateway Protocol route reflection	0	1	0
Data-Link Switching (DLSw) protocol	0	1	0

**Installed Licenses**

Add... Delete Display Keys... Download Keys

	ID	State	Version	Group	Enabled Features
<input type="checkbox"/>	G0300002223	valid	2	No group information	Border Gateway Protocol route reflection
<input type="checkbox"/>	G0300002224	valid	2	No group information	Data-Link Switching (DLSw) protocol
<input type="checkbox"/>	G0300002225	valid	2	No group information	J-FLOW traffic analysis (CFLOW reporting)

Add... Delete Display Keys... Download Keys

Copyright © 2004-2005, Juniper Networks, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Trademark Notice. Privacy. Juniper your Net.

The Licenses page displays a summary of licensed features that are configured on the Services Router and a list of the licenses that are installed on the router. The information on the license management page is summarized in Table 53 on page 133.

**Table 53: Summary of License Management Fields**

Field Name	Definition
<b>Feature Summary</b>	

**Table 53: Summary of License Management Fields** *(continued)*

Field Name	Definition
Feature	Name of the licensed feature: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ J-series licenses listed in Table 52 on page 131.</li> <li>■ All features—All-inclusive licenses</li> </ul>
Licenses Used	Number of licenses currently being used on the router. Usage is determined by the configuration on the router. If a feature license exists and that feature is configured, the license is considered used.
Licenses Installed	Number of licenses installed on the router for the particular feature.
Licenses Needed	Number of licenses required for legal use of the feature. Usage is determined by the configuration on the router: If a feature is configured and the license for that feature is not installed, a single license is needed.
<b>Installed Licenses</b>	
ID	Unique alphanumeric ID of the license.
State	Valid—The installed license key is valid.  Invalid—The installed license key is not valid.
Version	Numeric version number of the license key.
Group	If the license defines a group license, this field displays the group definition.  If the license requires a group license, this field displays the required group definition.  <b>NOTE:</b> Because group licenses are currently unsupported, this field is always blank.
Enabled Features	Name of the feature that is enabled with the particular license.

### **Adding New Licenses with the J-Web Interface**

To add a new license key on a Services Router with the J-Web license manager:

1. In the J-Web interface, select **Manage > Licenses**.
2. Under Installed Licenses, click **Add** to add a new license key.
3. Do *one* of the following, using a blank line to separate multiple license keys:
  - In the License File URL box, type the full URL to the destination file containing the license key to be added.
  - In the License Key Text box, paste the license key text, in plain-text format, for the license to be added.
4. Click **OK** to add the license key.
5. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 137.

### ***Deleting Licenses with the J-Web Interface***

To delete one or more license keys from a Services Router with the J-Web license manager:

1. In the J-Web interface, select **Manage > Licenses**.
2. Select the check box of the license or licenses you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 137.

### ***Displaying License Keys with the J-Web Interface***

To display the license keys installed on a Services Router with the J-Web license manager:

1. In the J-Web interface, select **Manage > Licenses**.
2. Under Installed Licenses, click **Display Keys** to display all the license keys installed on the router.

A screen displaying the license keys in text format appears. Multiple licenses are separated by a blank line.

3. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 137.

### ***Downloading Licenses with the J-Web Interface***

To download the license keys installed on the Services Router with the J-Web license manager:

1. In the J-Web interface, select **Manage > Licenses**.
2. Under Installed Licenses, click **Download Keys** to download all the license keys installed on the router to a single file.
3. Select **Save it to disk** and specify the file to which the license keys are to be written.
4. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 137.

## **Managing J-series Licenses with the CLI**

---

To manage the J-series licenses with the CLI, perform the following tasks.

- Adding New Licenses with the CLI on page 135
- Deleting a License with the CLI on page 136
- Saving License Keys with the CLI on page 136

### ***Adding New Licenses with the CLI***

To add a new license key to the Services Router with the CLI:

1. Enter operational mode in the CLI.
2. Enter one of the following CLI commands:
  - To add a license key from a file or URL, enter the following command, specifying the filename or the URL where the key is located:  
**request system license add *filename* | *url***
  - To add a license key from the terminal, enter the following command:  
**request system license add terminal**
3. When prompted, enter the license key, separating multiple license keys with a blank line.  
  
If the license key you enter is invalid, an error is generated when you press Ctrl-D to exit license entry mode.
4. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 137.

### ***Deleting a License with the CLI***

To delete a license key from the Services Router with the CLI:

1. Enter operational mode in the CLI.
2. Enter the following command for each license, specifying the license ID. You can delete only one license at a time.  
  
**request system license delete *license-id***
3. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 137.

### ***Saving License Keys with the CLI***

To save the licenses installed on the Services Router to a file with the CLI:

1. Enter operational mode in the CLI.
2. To save the installed license keys to a file or URL, enter the following command:

**request system license save *filename* | *url***

For example, the following command saves the installed license keys to a file named `license.config`:

**request system license save ftp://user@host/license.conf**

3. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 137.

## Verifying J-series License Management

To verify J-series license management, perform these tasks:

- Displaying Installed Licenses on page 137
- Displaying License Usage on page 138
- Displaying Installed License Keys on page 138

### Displaying Installed Licenses

**Purpose** Verify that the expected licenses are installed and active on the Services Router.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show system license` command.

```
user@router> show system license
License usage:

```

Feature name	Licenses used	Licenses installed	Licenses needed
j-flow	0	1	0
bgp-reflection	0	1	0
dls	0	1	0

```

Licenses installed:
License identifier: G03000002223
State: valid
License version: 2
Valid for device: JN001875AB
Features:
  bgp-reflection - Border Gateway Protocol route reflection

License identifier: G03000002224
State: valid
License version: 2
Valid for device: JN001875AB
Features:
  dls - Data-Link Switching (DLSw) protocol

License identifier: G03000002225
State: valid
License version: 2
Valid for device: JN001875AB
Features:
  j-flow - J-FLOW traffic analysis (CFLOW reporting)

```

**What It Means** The output shows a list of the license usage and a list of the licenses installed on the Services Router. Verify the following information:

- Each license is present. Licenses are listed in ascending alphanumeric order by license ID.
- The state of each license is `valid`.

A state of **invalid** indicates that the license key is not a valid license key. Either it was entered incorrectly or it is not valid for the specific device.

- The feature for each license is the expected feature. The features enabled are listed by license. An all-inclusive license has **All features** listed.
- All configured features have the required licenses installed. The **Licenses needed** column must show that no licenses are required.

## Displaying License Usage

**Purpose** Verify that the licenses fully cover the feature configuration on the Services Router.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show system license usage` command.

```
user@router> show system license usage
```

Feature name	Licenses used	Licenses installed	Licenses needed
j-flow	0	0	1
bgp-reflection	1	1	0
dls	1	1	0

**What It Means** The output shows a list of the licenses installed on the Services Router and how they are used. Verify the following information:

- Each licensed feature is present. Features are listed in ascending alphabetical order by license name. The number of licenses is shown in the third column. Verify that the appropriate number of licenses are installed.
- The number of used licenses matches the number of configured features. If a licensed feature is configured, the feature is considered used. The sample output shows that the DLSw and BGP route reflection features are configured.
- A license is installed on the Services Router for each configured feature. For every feature configured that does not have a license, one license is needed.

For example, the sample output shows that the user has configured the J-Flow traffic analysis feature but has not purchased the license for it. An additional license is required to be in compliance with license agreements.

## Displaying Installed License Keys

**Purpose** Verify the license keys installed on the Services Router.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show system license keys` command.

```
user@router> show system license keys
```

```
G03000002223 aeaqea qkjjhd ambrha 3tkqkc ayareb zicik6
              nv6jck btlxao 2trfyq 65cdou r5tbbb xdarpq
              qq53lu qcx4vm ydakcs t3yyh2 v5mq
```

```
G03000002224 aeaqea qkjjhd ambrha 3tkqkc ayargb zicik6
              nv6jck btlxao 2trfyq 65cdou r5tbof 14uon5
```

```
7rokz7 wgdcl r4q32p 2wu4zf zrx  
G03000002225 aeaqea qkjjhd ambrha 3tkqkc ayarab zicik6  
nv6jck btlxao 2trfyq 65cdou r5tbiu jr6ui2  
1mqgqj ouzq5a aiokdn 4tr4u2 wmcq
```

**What It Means** The output shows a list of the license keys installed on the Services Router. Verify that each expected license key is present.





## **Part 3**

# **Maintaining Services Router Hardware**

- Replacing and Troubleshooting Hardware Components on page 143
- Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware on page 167



## Chapter 10

# Replacing and Troubleshooting Hardware Components

Because many of the Services Router's hardware components are field-replaceable units (FRUs), you can remove and replace them yourself. When you need to replace a router component, contact your customer support or sales representative to order the field-replaceable unit (FRU) that contains the component. For instructions, see “Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware” on page 167.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Replacing Hardware Components on page 143
- Troubleshooting Hardware Components on page 165

## Replacing Hardware Components

---

This section contains the following topics:

- Tools and Parts Required on page 143
- Replacing the Console Port Cable on page 144
- Replacing a PIM on page 144
- Replacing PIM Cables on page 147
- Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk on page 148
- Removing and Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk on page 150
- Removing and Installing the USB Storage Device on page 153
- Removing and Installing DRAM Modules on page 154
- Replacing Power System Components on page 158

### ***Tools and Parts Required***

To replace hardware components, you need the tools and parts listed in Table 54 on page 144.

**Table 54: Tools and Parts Required**

Tool or Part	Components
Electrostatic bag or antistatic mat	All
Electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding wrist strap	All
Flat-blade screwdriver, approximately 1/4 in. (6 mm)	PIM
Phillips ( + ) screwdriver, number 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Compact flash</li> <li>■ DRAM modules</li> <li>■ Power system components</li> </ul>

## Replacing the Console Port Cable

The RJ-45 port labeled **CONSOLE** on the Services Router's front panel allows you to connect the router to an external management device, such as a laptop or a terminal server. For cable specifications, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.

To replace the console port cable:

1. Locate an appropriate replacement cable and connector.
2. Plug the Ethernet connector at either end of the cable into the console port on the front panel (see Figure 52 on page 112 and Figure 53 on page 113).
3. Plug the connector at the other end of the cable into the external management device. If you are connecting to a DB-9 serial port, use the provided RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter.

## Replacing a PIM

To remove or install field-replaceable Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) in a Services Router, you must first power off the router. This section contains the following topics:

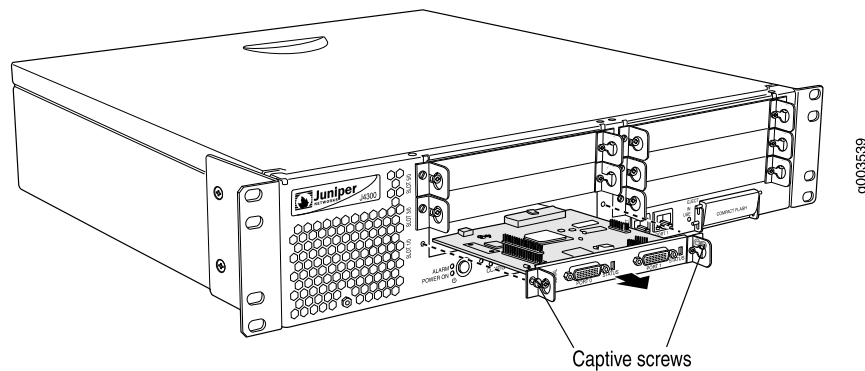
- Removing a PIM on page 144
- Installing a PIM on page 146

### Removing a PIM

The PIMs are installed in the front of the Services Router. A PIM weighs less than 1 lb (0.5 kg).



**CAUTION:** Do not hot-swap PIMs. Failure to power off the router before removing or installing a PIM might result in damage to the hardware.

**Figure 56: Removing a PIM**

To remove a PIM (see Figure 56 on page 145):

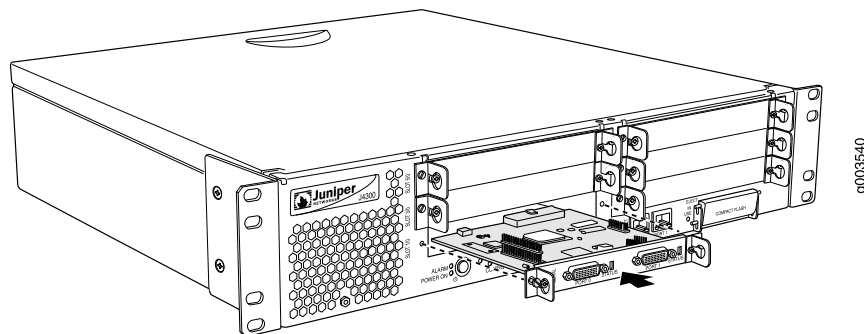
1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface to receive the PIM.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the Services Router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Verify that the **POWER** LED blinks and then turns off.
4. Label the cables connected to the PIM so that you can later reconnect each cable to the correct PIM.
5. Disconnect the cables from the PIM.
6. If necessary, arrange the cables to prevent them from dislodging or developing stress points:
  - Secure each cable so that it is not supporting its own weight as it hangs to the floor.
  - Place excess cable out of the way in a neatly coiled loop.
  - Use fasteners to maintain the shape of cable loops.
7. Loosen the captive screws on each side of the PIM faceplate.
8. Grasp the handles on each side of the PIM faceplate, and slide the PIM out of the router. Place it in the electrostatic bag or on the antistatic mat.
9. If you are not reinstalling a PIM into the emptied slot, install a blank PIM panel over the slot to maintain proper airflow.

## Installing a PIM



**CAUTION:** Do not hot-swap PIMs. Failure to power off the router before removing or installing a PIM might result in damage to the hardware.

**Figure 57: Installing a PIM**



To install a PIM (see Figure 57 on page 146):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the Services Router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
2. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Verify that the **POWER** LED blinks and then turns off.
3. Align the notches in the connector at the rear of the PIM with the notches in the PIM slot in the Services Router, and slide the PIM in until it lodges firmly in the router.



**CAUTION:** Slide the PIM straight into the slot to avoid damaging the components on the PIM.

4. Tighten the captive screws on each side of the PIM faceplate.
5. Insert the appropriate cables into the cable connectors on the PIM.
6. If necessary, arrange the cables to prevent them from dislodging or developing stress points:
  - Secure each cable so that it is not supporting its own weight as it hangs to the floor.
  - Place excess cable out of the way in a neatly coiled loop.

- Use fasteners to maintain the shape of cable loops.
7. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the **POWER** LED lights steadily after you press the power button.
  8. Verify that the PIM LEDs light steadily green to confirm that the PIM and its ports are online and operational. For more information about PIM LEDs, see “Field-Replaceable PIMs” on page 47.

You can also verify correct PIM functioning by issuing the **show chassis fpc pic-status** command described in the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.



**NOTE:** In the **show chassis fpc pic-status** command, the PIM slot number is reported as an FPC number and the PIM number (always 0) is reported as a PIC number.

---

9. Complete the initial configuration of each network interface by using the CLI or J-Web interface. For information about configuring network interfaces, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

## Replacing PIM Cables

Removing and installing PIM cables does not affect Services Router function, except that a PIM does not receive or transmit data while its cable is disconnected. To replace a PIM cable, perform the following procedures:

- Removing a PIM Cable on page 147
- Installing a PIM Cable on page 148

### Removing a PIM Cable

To remove a PIM cable:

1. If you are removing all cables connected to the PIM, issue the following CLI command to take the PIM offline:

```
user@host> request chassis pic fpc-slot pim-slot pic-slot 0 offline
```

For example, to take the PIM in slot 4 offline, enter the following command:

```
user@host> request chassis pic fpc-slot 4 pic-slot 0 offline
```

For more information about the command, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

2. Unplug the cable from the cable connector port.
3. Detach the cable from the destination port.

## Installing a PIM Cable

To install a PIM cable:

1. Have ready a length of the type of cable used by the PIM. For cable specifications, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 175.
2. Insert the cable connector into the cable connector port on the PIM faceplate.
3. Arrange the cable as necessary to prevent it from dislodging or developing stress points:
  - Secure the cable so that it is not supporting its own weight as it hangs to the floor.
  - Place excess cable out of the way in a neatly coiled loop.
  - Use fasteners to maintain the shape of cable loops.
4. Insert the other end of the cable into the destination port.
5. Repeat the previous steps for any additional cables.
6. If the PIM is offline (its status LED is steadily red), issue the following CLI command to bring the PIM online:

```
user@host> request chassis pic fpc-slot pim-slot pic-slot 0 online
```

For example, to bring the PIM in slot 4 online, enter the following command:

```
user@host> request chassis pic fpc-slot 4 pic-slot 0 online
```

For more information about the command, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

7. Verify that the PIM status LED shines steadily green to confirm that the PIM is online.

You can also verify correct PIM functioning by issuing the **show chassis fpc pic-status** command described in the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.



**NOTE:** In the **show chassis fpc pic-status** command, the PIM slot number is reported as an FPC number and the PIM number (always 0) is reported as a PIC number.

---

## Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk

The primary compact flash drive is located in a slot at the rear of the Services Router as shown in Figure 2 on page 12, Figure 8 on page 22, and Figure 10 on page 22. The primary compact flash disk provides primary storage for the router. It can accommodate software images, configuration files, and microcode.



For information about configuring the primary compact flash disk, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

To remove and install a primary compact flash disk, perform the following procedures:

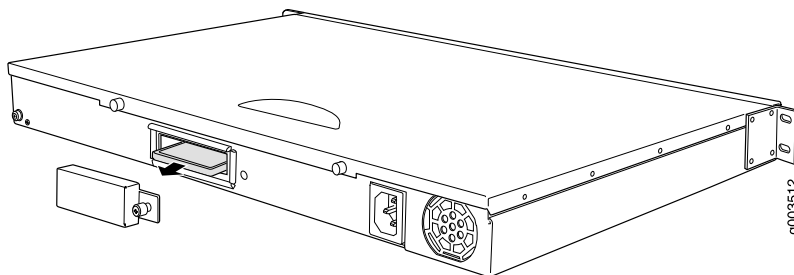
- Removing the Primary Compact Flash Disk on page 149
- Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk on page 149

### Removing the Primary Compact Flash Disk

To remove the primary compact flash disk (see Figure 58 on page 149):

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see the Getting Started Guide for your model.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the POWER LED to turn off.
4. Remove the power cord from the power supply.
5. Loosen the thumbscrew that secures the primary compact flash drive cover on the rear of the chassis.
6. Remove the compact flash drive cover.
7. Gently grasp the compact flash disk, and slide it out of the connector (see Figure 58 on page 149).
8. Place the compact flash disk on the antistatic mat or in the electrostatic bag.

**Figure 58: Removing the Primary Compact Flash Disk**



### Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk

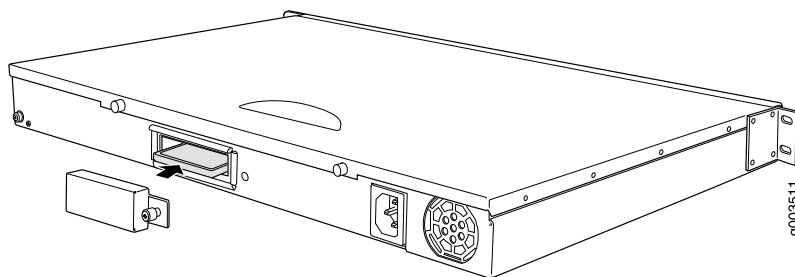
To install the primary compact flash disk (see Figure 59 on page 150):



**NOTE:** If you plan to boot the Services Router from the primary compact flash disk, you must first configure the primary compact flash disk in another router or with a computer running UNIX or Cygwin. For more information, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see the Getting Started Guide for your model.
2. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the **POWER** LED to turn off.
3. Remove the power cord from the power supply.
4. Loosen the thumbscrew that secures the primary compact flash drive cover on the rear of the chassis.
5. Remove the compact flash drive cover.
6. Slide the compact flash disk into the connector on the Routing Engine (see Figure 59 on page 150).
7. Replace the compact flash drive cover.
8. Tighten the thumbscrew that secures the compact flash drive cover to the rear of the chassis.
9. Plug the power cord into the power supply.
10. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the **POWER** LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

**Figure 59: Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk**



## Removing and Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk

The removable compact flash disk is an optional component on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers. The removable compact flash disk provides secondary storage for the router. It can accommodate software images, configuration files, and microcode. If the primary compact flash disk fails on startup, the router boots from the removable compact flash disk.

For information about configuring the removable compact flash disk, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

To remove and install a removable compact flash disk, perform the following procedures:

- Removing the Removable Compact Flash Disk on page 151
- Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk on page 152

## Removing the Removable Compact Flash Disk



**NOTE:** Depending on your configuration, the Services Router might not have a backup compact flash drive. If no backup compact flash drive is installed, proceed directly to the next section, “Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk” on page 152.

The removable compact flash drive is located in a slot on the front panel of the Services Router. To remove the removable compact flash disk (see Figure 60 on page 152):

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
3. Verify the **CF REMOVE** LED is off.

If the **CF REMOVE** LED is on, the router might have booted from the removable compact flash disk.

To see which device the router used to boot, issue the **show system storage** command from the CLI. For example:

```
user@host> show system storage
```

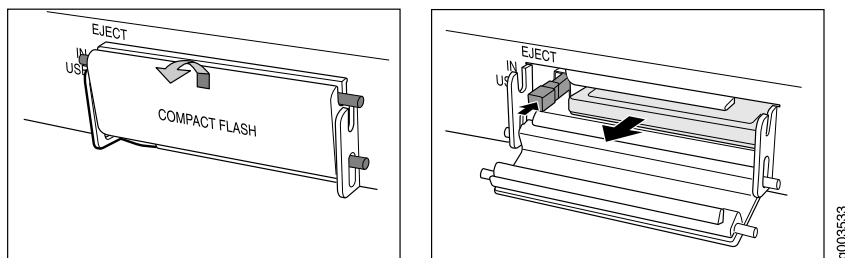
Filesystem	512-blocks	Used	Avail	Capacity	Mounted on
/dev/ad0s1a	218254	175546	40526	81%	/
...					

The boot device is mounted on /. The *primary* compact flash disk is located at **ad0**. The *removable* compact flash disk is located at **ad2**. The USB storage device is located at **usb0**. This example shows that the router booted from the primary compact flash disk.

4. If the **show system storage** output indicates that the router booted from the removable compact flash disk, press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the **POWER** LED to turn off before you remove the compact flash drive.
5. Slide the compact flash drive door up to unlatch the door, then tilt the top of the door out (see Figure 60 on page 152).

6. Eject the removable compact flash disk by pressing the button to the left of the compact flash drive once to unlock the button, and again to eject the compact flash drive.
7. Gently grasp the compact flash disk, and slide it out of the connector.
8. Place the compact flash disk on the antistatic mat or in the electrostatic bag.

**Figure 60: Removing the Removable Compact Flash Disk**

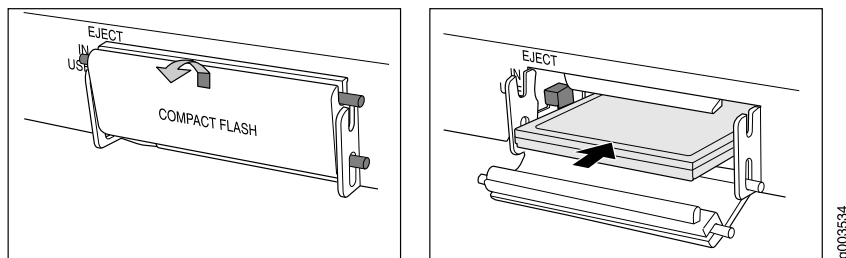


### Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk

To install the removable compact flash disk, follow this procedure (see Figure 61 on page 152):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
2. Slide the compact flash door up to unlatch the door, then tilt the top of the door out (see Figure 61 on page 152).
3. Slide the compact flash disk into the connector on the Routing Engine.
4. Tilt the compact flash door in, and slide it down until it is secured.
5. To configure the removable compact flash disk with the **request system snapshot** command, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

**Figure 61: Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk**



## Removing and Installing the USB Storage Device

USB storage devices are optional components on J-series Services Routers. If installed, a USB storage device provides secondary storage for the router. It can accommodate software images, configuration files, and microcode. If the primary compact flash disk fails on startup, and the removable compact flash disk is not installed or fails, the router boots from the USB storage device.

For information about configuring the USB storage device, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.



**NOTE:** For a list of supported USB storage devices, see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

To remove and install a USB storage device, perform the following procedures:

- Removing the USB Storage Device on page 153
- Installing the USB Storage Device on page 154

### Removing the USB Storage Device



**NOTE:** Depending on your configuration, the Services Router might not have a USB storage device. If no USB storage device is installed, proceed directly to the next section, “Installing the USB Storage Device” on page 154.

The USB storage device is installed into the USB port on the front panel of the Services Router. To remove the USB storage device:

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
3. Verify that the router did not boot from the USB storage device by issuing the `show system storage` command from the CLI. For example:

```
user@host> show system storage
```

Filesystem	512-blocks	Used	Avail	Capacity	Mounted on
/dev/ad0s1a	218254	175546	40526	81%	/
...					

The boot device is mounted on /. The primary compact flash disk is located at `ad0`. The removable compact flash disk is located at `ad2`. The USB storage device is located at `da0`. This example shows that the router booted from the primary compact flash disk.

4. If the **show system storage** output indicates that the router booted from the USB storage device, press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the **POWER** LED to turn off before you remove the USB storage device.
5. Gently grasp the USB storage device and slide it out of the USB port.
6. Place the USB storage device on the antistatic mat or in the electrostatic bag.

### Installing the USB Storage Device

To install the USB storage device:



**NOTE:** For a list of supported USB storage devices, see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

---

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
2. Orient the USB storage device with the USB port on the front panel of the router.
3. Insert the USB storage device into the USB port. If the USB storage device does not easily slide into the port, it might not be oriented correctly. Turn the USB storage device upside-down and try again.
4. To configure the USB storage device with the **request system snapshot** command, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

### Removing and Installing DRAM Modules

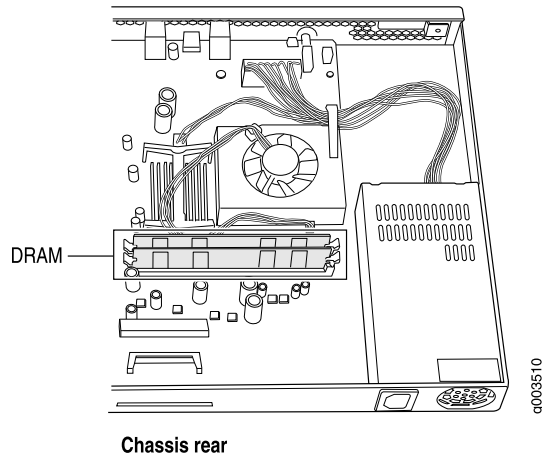
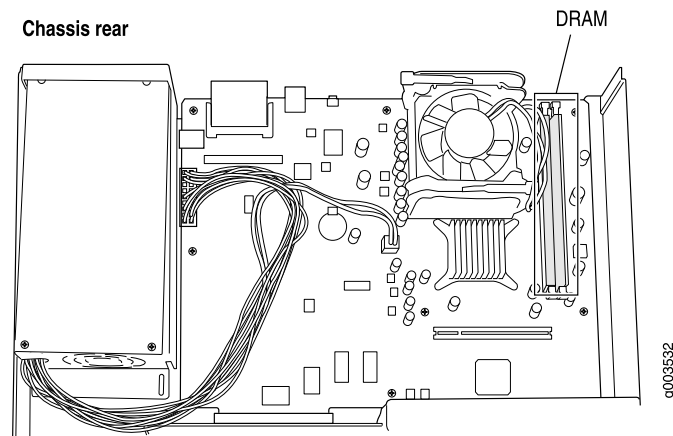
The DRAM installed on the Routing Engine provides storage for the routing and forwarding tables and for other Routing Engine processes. The design of the Routing Engine allows you to modify the DRAM configuration by adding DRAM modules to the Routing Engine board, or removing DRAM modules from the board.

The DRAM modules are located on the top of the Routing Engine, as shown in Figure 62 on page 155 and Figure 63 on page 155.



**NOTE:** Use only DRAM modules purchased through Juniper Networks specifically for your model. Also, DRAM modules are not always transferable across J-series platforms. You can transfer a DRAM module between a J4300 and a J6300 Services Router, but not between these models and any other Services Router.

---

**Figure 62: J2300 DRAM Location****Figure 63: J4300 and J6300 DRAM Location**

To modify the DRAM configuration, use the following procedures:

- Removing a DRAM Module on page 155
- Installing a DRAM Module on page 157

### Removing a DRAM Module

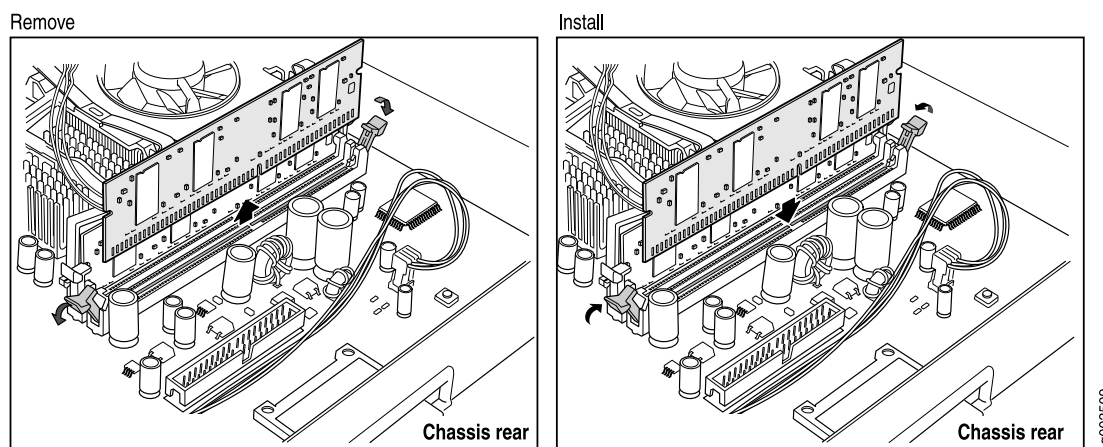


**NOTE:** Depending on your configuration, the Services Router might have an empty DRAM socket. If you are adding a DRAM module to the DRAM configuration, proceed directly to “Installing a DRAM Module” on page 157.

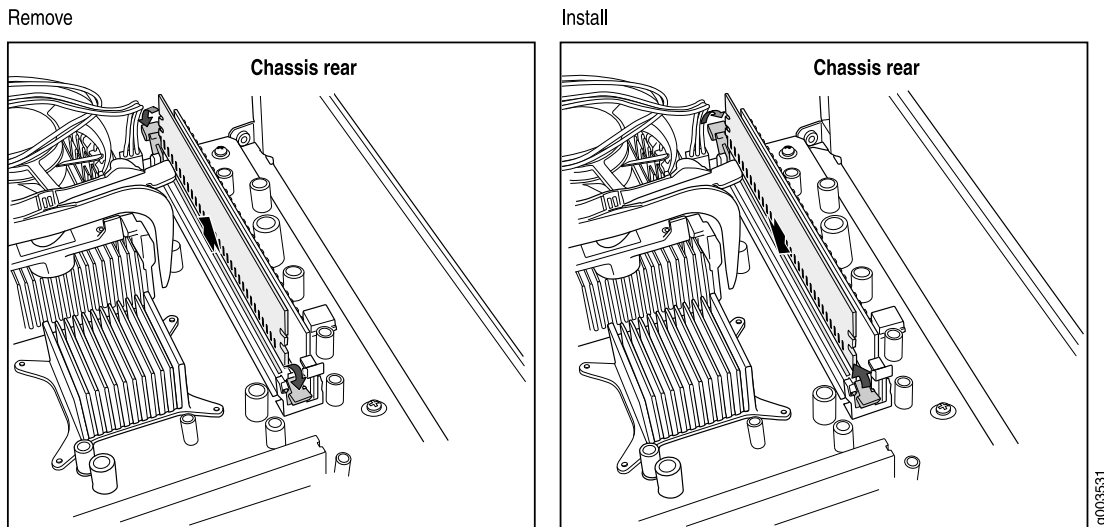
To remove a DRAM module:

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see the Getting Started Guide for your router.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the **POWER** LED to turn off.
4. Unplug the power cord or cable from the power source receptacle.
5. Remove the screws from the sides and top of the chassis that secure the cover to the chassis.
6. Slide the cover off the chassis.
7. To release the DRAM module, press the plastic ejectors on both sides of the module (see Figure 64 on page 156 or Figure 65 on page 157).
8. Grasp the DRAM module, being careful not to touch any electrical components on the module, and firmly pull it out of the slot on the Routing Engine.
9. Place the DRAM module on the antistatic mat or in the electrostatic bag.

**Figure 64: Adding or Replacing a DRAM Module in a J2300 Chassis**





**Figure 65: Adding or Replacing a DRAM Module in a J4300 or J6300 Chassis**

### Installing a DRAM Module

To install a DRAM module onto the Routing Engine:

1. Take the following steps if you have not already done so:
  - a. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see the Getting Started Guide for your router.
  - b. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the POWER LED to turn off.
  - c. Unplug the power cord or cable from the power source receptacle.
  - d. Remove the screws from the sides and top of the chassis that secure the cover to the chassis.
  - e. Slide the cover off the chassis.
2. Remove the DRAM module from its electrostatic bag.
3. To open the empty DRAM socket, press the plastic ejectors on both sides (see Figure 64 on page 156 or Figure 65 on page 157).
4. Grasp the DRAM module by the edges, being careful not to touch any electrical components.
5. Pressing firmly on both ends, push the module into the socket until the ejectors click into the closed position (see Figure 64 on page 156 or Figure 65 on page 157).
6. Slide the cover onto the chassis.
7. Replace and tighten the screws on the sides and top of the chassis that secure the cover to the chassis.
8. Replace the power cord or cable.

9. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the **POWER** LED lights steadily after you press the power button.
10. To view the DRAM configuration and verify that it was installed correctly, issue the **show chassis routing-engine** command, described in the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*. This command shows the total memory installed.

## Replacing Power System Components

The power cords on all Services Routers are replaceable.

You can add a second power supply to the J6300 Services Router that is of the same type as the first (either AC or DC).

The power supplies are located at the right rear of the chassis (see Figure 10 on page 22 or Figure 11 on page 23). Each J6300 power supply provides power to all components in the router. The J6300 power supplies are fully redundant. If one power supply fails or is removed, the remaining power supply instantly assumes the entire electrical load. One power supply can provide full power for as long as the router is operational.

Each J6300 power supply is hot-insertable and hot-removable.



**CAUTION:** Do not leave a power supply slot empty for more than a short time while the Services Router is operational. The power supply or a blank power supply panel must remain in the chassis for proper airflow.

---

To replace power system components, use the following procedures:

- Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord on page 158
- Removing an AC Power Supply from a J6300 Router on page 159
- Installing an AC Power Supply in a J6300 Router on page 160
- Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable on page 161
- Removing a DC Power Supply on page 162
- Installing a DC Power Supply on page 163

### Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord

To replace the AC power cord for a redundant power supply:

1. Locate a replacement power cord with the type of plug appropriate for your geographical location (see “AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications” on page 85).
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if

the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.

3. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the **POWER** LED to turn off.



**NOTE:** If the power supply is a redundant power supply in a J6300 Services Router, you can leave the router powered on and power flowing in the alternate power supply.

---

4. Unplug the power cord from the power source receptacle.
5. Unplug the power cord from the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
6. Insert the appliance coupler end of the replacement power cord into the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
7. Insert the power cord plug into an AC power source receptacle.



**NOTE:** Each power supply must be connected to a dedicated AC power feed. For information about connecting to AC power sources, see “Connecting Power” on page 96.

---

8. Verify that the power cord does not block access to Services Router components or drape where people might trip on it.
9. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the **POWER** LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

### Removing an AC Power Supply from a J6300 Router

The power supplies are located at the right rear of the chassis. A power supply weighs 2.4 lb (1.1 kg).

To remove an AC power supply from a J6300 Services Router (see Figure 66 on page 160):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
2. Press and release the power button to power off the Services Router. Wait for the **POWER** LED to turn off.



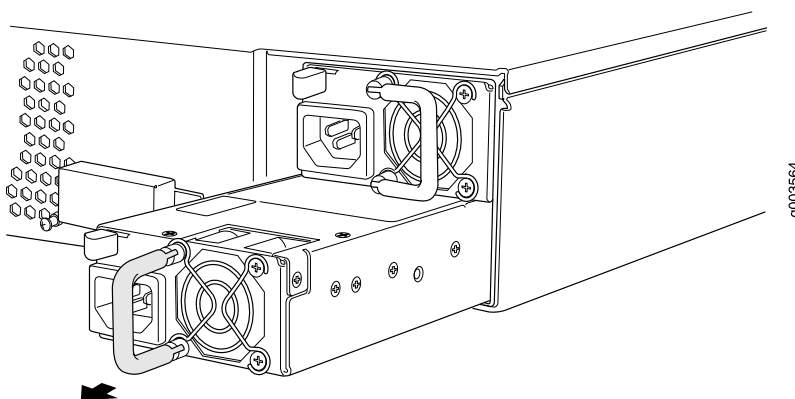
**NOTE:** If the power supply is a redundant power supply in a J6300 Service Router, you can leave the router powered on and power flowing in the alternate power supply.

---

3. Unplug the power cord from the power source receptacle.
4. Unplug the power cord from the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.

5. Slide the ejector tab on the power supply faceplate to the right and hold it in place to unlock the power supply.
6. Grasp the handle on the power supply faceplate, and pull firmly to start removing the power supply. Slide it halfway out of the chassis (see Figure 66 on page 160).
7. Place one hand underneath the power supply to support it and slide it completely out of the chassis.
8. If you are not reinstalling a power supply into the emptied slot, install a blank power supply panel over the slot.

**Figure 66: Removing an AC Power Supply**



### Installing an AC Power Supply in a J6300 Router

To install an AC power supply in a J6300 Services Router (see Figure 67 on page 161):

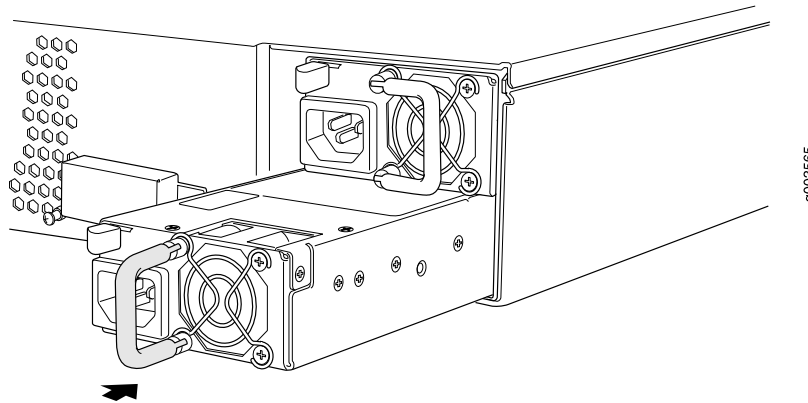
1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
2. Using both hands, slide the power supply into the chassis until you feel resistance.
3. Firmly push the power supply into the chassis until it comes to a stop. Make sure that the power supply faceplate is flush with any adjacent power supply faceplate.
4. Insert the appliance coupler end of a power cord into the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
5. Insert the power cord plug into an AC power source receptacle.



**NOTE:** Each power supply must be connected to a dedicated AC power feed. For information about connecting to AC power sources, see “Connecting Power” on page 96.

6. Verify that the power cord does not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on it.
7. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the POWER LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

**Figure 67: Installing an AC Power Supply**



### Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable

To replace a power cable for a DC power supply:

1. Locate a replacement power cable and a lug that meet the specifications defined in “Chassis Grounding” on page 96 and “DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications” on page 86.



**CAUTION:** A licensed electrician must attach a cable lug to the power cable that you supply. A cable with an incorrectly attached lug can damage the router (for example, by causing a short circuit).

2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the Services Router. Wait for the POWER LED to turn off.
4. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that the cable leads cannot become active during installation.



**CAUTION:** You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity. There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply.

5. Remove the power cable from the DC power source.
6. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
7. Within the terminal block, remove the screw that fastens the power cable lug to the terminal block.
8. Carefully move the power cable out of the way.
9. Using the removed screw, secure the replacement power cable to the appropriate terminal. Tighten the screw until snug. Do not overtighten.

The screw contains a captive washer used to secure the power cable lug to the terminal block.



**NOTE:** Each power supply must be connected to a dedicated DC power feed. For information about connecting to DC power sources, see “Connecting Power” on page 96.

---

10. Dress the power cable appropriately.
11. Replace the clear plastic cover over the terminal block.
12. Verify that the power cable does not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on it.
13. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the **POWER** LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

### Removing a DC Power Supply

The power supplies are located at the right rear of the chassis. A power supply weighs 2.4 lb (1.1 kg).

To remove a DC power supply (see Figure 68 on page 163):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
2. Press and release the power button to power off the Services Router. Wait for the **POWER** LED to turn off.
3. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that the cable leads cannot become active during installation.

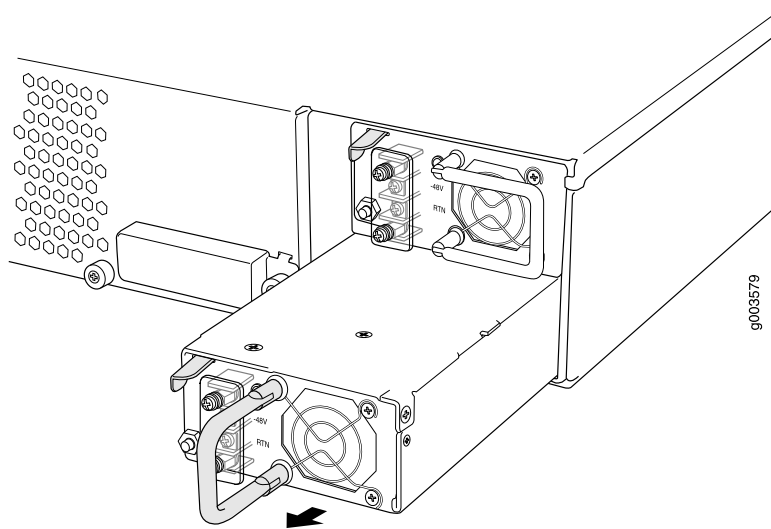


**CAUTION:** You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity. There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply.

---

4. Remove the power cables from the DC power source.
5. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
6. Within the terminal block, remove the screws that fasten the power cable lugs to the terminal block.
7. Carefully move the power cables out of the way.
8. Slide the ejector tab on the power supply faceplate to the right, and hold it in place to unlock the power supply.
9. Grasp the handle on the power supply faceplate, and pull firmly to start removing the power supply. Slide it halfway out of the chassis (see Figure 68 on page 163).
10. Place one hand underneath the power supply to support it, and slide it completely out of the chassis.
11. If you are not reinstalling a power supply into the emptied slot, install a blank power supply panel over the slot.

**Figure 68: Removing a DC Power Supply**



### Installing a DC Power Supply

Each power supply in a DC-powered router must be connected to earth ground. A ground terminal is provided on each DC power supply for this purpose.

To install a DC power supply (see Figure 69 on page 165):

1. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that the cable leads cannot become active during installation.



**CAUTION:** You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity. There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply.

---

2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
3. Using both hands, slide the power supply into the chassis until you feel resistance.
4. Firmly push the power supply into the chassis until it comes to a stop. Make sure that the power supply faceplate is flush with any adjacent power supply faceplate.
5. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
6. Within the terminal block, remove the two center screws next to the labels **–48 VDC** and **RTN**.

Each screw contains a captive washer to secure a power cable lug to the terminal block.

7. Using one of the removed screws, secure the positive (+) DC source power cable lug to the **RTN** terminal. Tighten the screw until snug. Do not overtighten. Apply between 8 lb-in. (0.9 Nm) and 9 lb-in. (1.02 Nm) of torque to the screw.
  8. Using the other removed screw, secure the negative (–) DC source power cable lug to the **–48 VDC** terminal. Tighten the screw until snug. Do not overtighten. Apply between 8 lb-in. (0.9 Nm) and 9 lb-in. (1.02 Nm) of torque to the screw.
- 

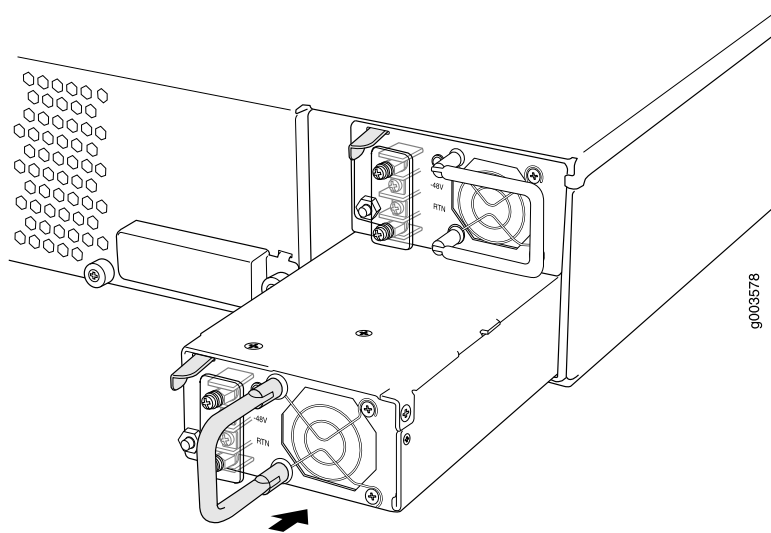


**NOTE:** Each power supply must be connected to a dedicated DC power feed. For information about connecting to DC power sources, see “Connecting Power” on page 96.

---

9. Dress the power cables appropriately.
10. Replace the clear plastic cover over the terminal block.
11. Verify that the power cord does not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on it.
12. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the **POWER** LED lights steadily after you press the power button.



**Figure 69: Installing a DC Power Supply**

## Troubleshooting Hardware Components

This section provides an overview of the resources you can use to troubleshoot hardware problems on the Services Router:

- Chassis Alarm Conditions on page 165
- Contacting the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center on page 166

### Chassis Alarm Conditions

When the Routing Engine detects an alarm condition, it lights the **ALARM** LED on the front panel. When the condition is corrected, the light turns off.



**NOTE:** The **ALARM** LED on the Services Router lights yellow whether the alarm condition is major (red) or minor (yellow).

To view a more detailed description of the alarm cause, issue the **show chassis alarms** CLI command:

```
user@host> show chassis alarms
```

Table 55 on page 166 describes alarms that can occur for a chassis component such as the Routing Engine or a Physical Interface Module (PIM).

**Table 55: Chassis Alarm Conditions and Corrective Actions**

Component	Alarm Conditions	Corrective Action	Alarm Severity
Alternative boot media	The Services Router boots from an alternative boot device.	Typically, the router boots from the primary compact flash disk. If you configured your router to boot from an alternative boot device, ignore this alarm condition.  If you did not configure the router to boot from an alternative boot device, contact JTAC. (See “Requesting Support” on page xx.)	Yellow (minor)
PIM	A PIM has failed.  When a PIM fails, it attempts to reboot. If the Routing Engine detects that a PIM is rebooting too often, it shuts down the PIM.	Replace the failed PIM. (See “Replacing a PIM” on page 144.)	Red (major)
Routing Engine	An error occurred during the process of reading or writing compact flash.	Reformat the compact flash and install a bootable image. (See the <i>J-series Services Router Administration Guide</i> .)  If this remedy fails, you must replace the failed Routing Engine. To contact JTAC, see “Requesting Support” on page xx.	Yellow (minor)
	Routing Engine temperature is too warm.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check the room temperature. (See “Router Environmental Tolerances” on page 81.)</li> <li>■ Check the air flow. (See “General Site Guidelines” on page 79.)</li> <li>■ Check the fans. (See “J2300 Cooling System” on page 19 or “J4300 and J6300 Cooling System” on page 30.) If you must replace a fan or the Routing Engine, contact JTAC. (See “Requesting Support” on page xx.)</li> </ul>	Yellow (minor)
	Routing Engine fan has failed.	Replace the failed fan. To contact JTAC, see “Requesting Support” on page xx.	Red (major)

### Contacting the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center

If you need assistance while troubleshooting a Services Router, open a support case using the Case Manager link at <http://www.juniper.net/support/>, or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).

## Chapter 11

# Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware

This chapter describes how to return the Services Router or individual components to Juniper Networks for repair or replacement. It contains the following topics:

- Locating Component Serial Numbers on page 167
- Contacting Customer Support on page 169
- Return Procedure on page 170
- Packing a Router or Component for Shipment on page 171

## Locating Component Serial Numbers

---

Before contacting Juniper Networks to request a Return Materials Authorization (RMA), you must find the serial number on the router or component. To list the router components and their serial numbers, enter the following command-line interface (CLI) command:

```
user@host> show chassis hardware
Hardware inventory:
Item           Version  Part number  Serial number  Description
Chassis                               015810200500  J6350
Midplane       REV 00   710-012339
System IO      REV 00   710-012315  JX350 System IO
Routing Engine REV 00   710-012151  RE-J6350-3400
HW crypto
FPC 0
PIC 0
PIC           4x GE Base
```

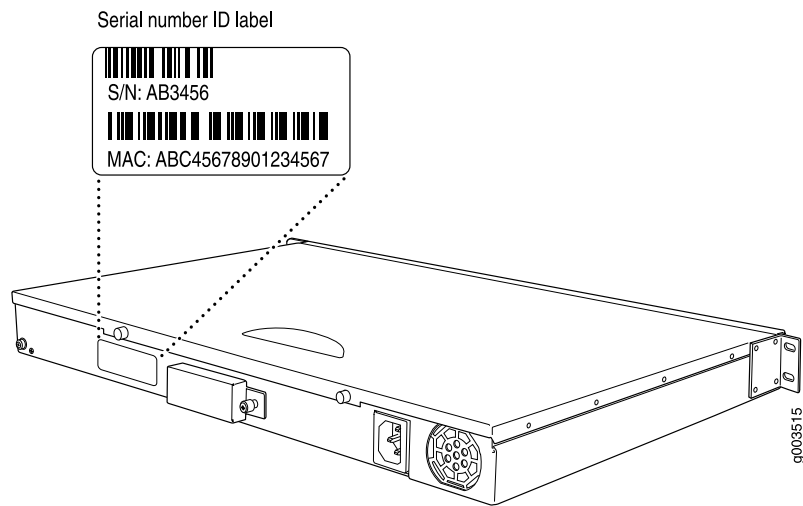


**NOTE:** In the `show chassis hardware` command, the PIM slot number is reported as an FPC number and the PIM number (always 0) is reported as the PIC number.

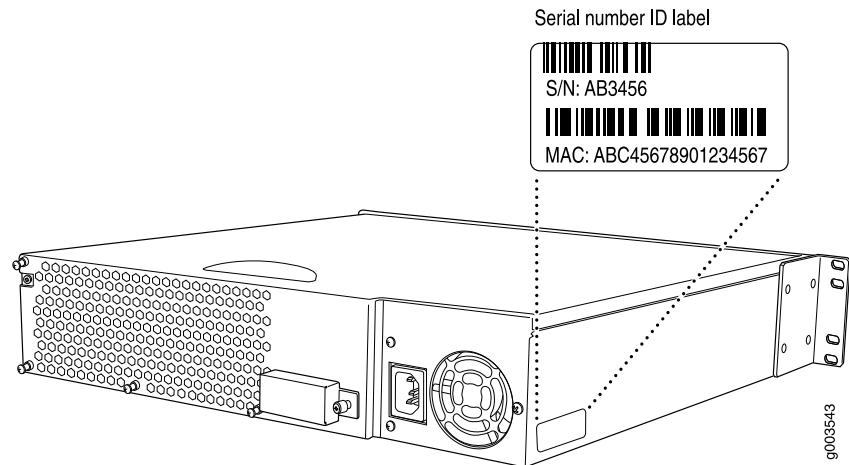
---

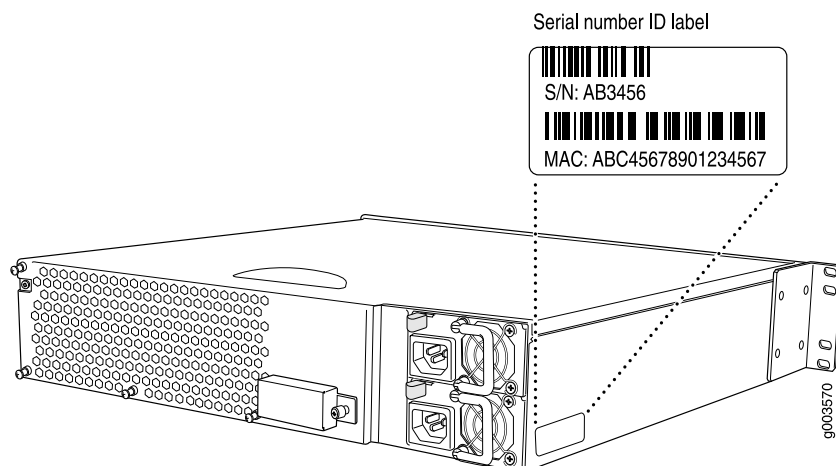
Most components also have a serial number ID label (see Figure 70 on page 168 through Figure 72 on page 169) attached to the component body.

**Figure 70: J2300 Serial Number ID Label**



**Figure 71: J4300 Serial Number ID Label**



**Figure 72: J6300 Serial Number ID Label**

The following sections describe the label location on each type of component:

- PIM Serial Number Label on page 169
- J6300 Power Supply Serial Number Labels on page 169

### ***PIM Serial Number Label***

PIMs are field-replaceable. Each PIM has a unique serial number. The serial number label is located on the right side of the PIM, when the PIM is horizontally oriented (as it would be installed in the router). The exact location may be slightly different on different PIMs, depending on the placement of components on the PIM board.

### ***J6300 Power Supply Serial Number Labels***

The power supplies installed in the J6300 Services Router are field-replaceable. Each power supply has a unique serial number. The serial number label is located on the top of the power supply.

## **Contacting Customer Support**

After you have located the serial numbers of the components you need to return, contact Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC) in one of the following ways.

You can contact JTAC 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

- On the Web, using the Case Manager link at <http://www.juniper.net/support/>
- By telephone:

From the US and Canada: 1-888-314-JTAC

From all other locations: 1-408-745-9500

If contacting JTAC by telephone, enter your 11-digit case number followed by the pound (#) key if this is an existing case, or press the star (\*) key to be routed to the next available support engineer.

### **Information You Might Need to Supply to JTAC**

When requesting support from JTAC by telephone, be prepared to provide the following information:

- Your existing case number, if you have one
- Details of the failure or problem
- Type of activity being performed on the router when the problem occurred
- Configuration data displayed by one or more **show** commands

### **Return Procedure**

---

If the problem cannot be resolved by the JTAC technician, an RMA number is issued. This number is used to track the returned material at the factory and to return repaired or new components to the customer as needed.



**NOTE:** Do not return any component to Juniper Networks unless you have first obtained an RMA number. Juniper Networks reserves the right to refuse shipments that do not have an RMA. Refused shipments will be returned to the customer via collect freight.

---

For more information about return and repair policies, see the customer support Web page at <http://www.juniper.net/support/guidelines.html>.

For product problems or technical support issues, open a support case using the Case Manager link at <http://www.juniper.net/support/>, or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (outside the United States).

When you need to return a component, follow this procedure:

1. Determine the part number and serial number of the component. For instructions, see “Locating Component Serial Numbers” on page 167.
2. Obtain a Return Materials Authorization (RMA) number from the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). You can send e-mail or telephone as described above.
3. Provide the following information in your e-mail message or during the telephone call:
  - Part number and serial number of component
  - Your name, organization name, telephone number, and fax number
  - Description of the failure

4. The support representative validates your request and issues an RMA number for return of the component.
5. Pack the router or component for shipment, as described in “Packing a Router or Component for Shipment” on page 171.

## Packing a Router or Component for Shipment

---

This section contains the following topics:

- Tools and Parts Required on page 171
- Packing the Services Router for Shipment on page 171
- Packing Components for Shipment on page 172

### Tools and Parts Required

To remove components from the router or the router from a rack, you need the following tools and parts:

- Blank panels to cover empty slots
- Electrostatic bag or antistatic mat, for each component
- Electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding wrist strap
- Flat-blade screwdriver, approximately 1/4 in. (6 mm)
- Phillips (+) screwdrivers, numbers 1 and 2

### Packing the Services Router for Shipment

To pack the router for shipment, follow this procedure:

1. Retrieve the shipping carton and packing materials in which the router was originally shipped. If you do not have these materials, contact your Juniper Networks representative about approved packaging materials.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 195.
3. On the console or other management device connected to the master Routing Engine, enter CLI operational mode and issue the following command to shut down the router software.

```
user@host> request system halt
```

Wait until a message appears on the console confirming that the operating system has halted. For more information about the command, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

4. Shut down power to the router by pressing the power button on the front panel of the router.
5. Disconnect power from the router. For instructions, see “Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord” on page 158.
6. Remove the cables that connect to all external devices. For instructions, see “Removing a PIM Cable” on page 147.
7. Remove all field-replaceable units (FRUs) from the router.
8. If the router is installed on a wall or rack, have one person support the weight of the router, while another person unscrews and removes the mounting screws.
9. Place the router in the shipping carton.
10. Cover the router with an ESD bag, and place the packing foam on top of and around the router.
11. Replace the accessory box on top of the packing foam.
12. Securely tape the box closed.
13. Write the RMA number on the exterior of the box to ensure proper tracking.

### ***Packing Components for Shipment***

To pack and ship individual components, follow these guidelines:

- When you return components, make sure they are adequately protected with packing materials and packed so that the pieces are prevented from moving around inside the carton.
- Use the original shipping materials if they are available.
- Place individual boards in electrostatic bags.
- Write the RMA number on the exterior of the box to ensure proper tracking.



**CAUTION:** Do not stack any of the router components.

---



## **Part 4**

# **J-series Requirements and Specifications**

- Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts on page 175
- Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information on page 191



## Chapter 12

# Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts

The network interfaces supported on the router accept different kinds of network cable.

- Serial PIM Cable Specifications on page 175
- Fast Ethernet RJ-45 Connector Pinout on page 185
- Chassis Console Port Pinouts on page 185
- E1 and T1 RJ-48 Cable Pinouts on page 186
- E3 and T3 BNC Connector Pinout on page 189
- ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout on page 189
- ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout on page 190

## Serial PIM Cable Specifications

The 2-port serial PIM uses the cables and connectors summarized in Table 56 on page 175. Pinouts are detailed in Table 57 on page 176 through Table 66 on page 184.

**Table 56: 2-Port Serial PIM Cables and Connectors**

Name	Connector	Connector Hardware	End-to-End Conductors	Pinouts
RS-232 DTE	DB-25 male	4-40 threaded jackscrews	13	Table 57 on page 176
RS-232 DCE	DB-25 female	4-40 threaded jacknuts	13	Table 58 on page 177
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE	DC-37 (DB-37) male	4-40 threaded jackscrews	25	Table 59 on page 177
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE	DC-37 (DB-37) female	4-40 threaded jacknuts	25	Table 60 on page 178
EIA-530A DTE	DB-25 male	4-40 threaded jackscrews	23	Table 61 on page 180

**Table 56: 2-Port Serial PIM Cables and Connectors** *(continued)*

Name	Connector	Connector Hardware	End-to-End Conductors	Pinouts
EIA-530A DCE	DB-25 female	4-40 threaded jacknuts	22	Table 62 on page 181
V.35 DTE	M/34 male	Standard (Normally included with M/34 connector shell)	18	Table 63 on page 182
V.35 DCE	M/34 female	Standard (Normally included with M/34 connector shell)	18	Table 64 on page 183
X.21 DTE	DB-15 male	M3 threaded jackscrews	13	Table 65 on page 183
X.21 DCE	DB-15 female	M3 threaded jacknuts	13	Table 66 on page 184

## RS-232 DTE Cable Pinout

**Table 57: RS-232 DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Frame Ground
60	2	–	Transmit Data
1	3	–	Receive Data
48	4	–	Request to Send
37	5	–	Clear to Send
9	6	–	Data Set Ready
57	7	–	Signal Ground
13	8	–	Data Carrier Detect
56	15	–	Transmit Clock
5	17	–	Receive Clock
41	18	–	Local Loopback
33	20	–	Data Terminal Ready
52	24	–	Terminal Clock
22 to 21	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

## RS-232 DCE Cable Pinout

**Table 58: RS-232 DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Frame Ground
1	2	–	Transmit Data
60	3	–	Receive Data
37	4	–	Request to Send
48	5	–	Clear to Send
33	6	–	Data Set Ready
57	7	–	Signal Ground
13	8	–	Data Carrier Detect
56	15	–	Transmit Clock
52	17	–	Receive Clock
45	18	–	Local Loopback
9	20	–	Data Terminal Ready
5	24	–	Terminal Clock
22 to 21	–	–	–

## RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE Cable Pinout

**Table 59: RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DC-37 (DB-37) Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
60	4	59	Send Data (A)
56	5	55	Send Timing (A)
1	6	2	Receive Data (A)
48	7	47	Request to Send (A)
5	8	6	Receive Timing (A)
37	9	38	Clear to Send (A)

**Table 59: RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE Cable Pinout** *(continued)*

LFH-60 Pin	DC-37 (DB-37) Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
41	10	–	Local Loopback
9	11	10	Data Mode (A)
33	12	34	Terminal Ready (A)
13	13	14	Receive Ready (A)
52	17	51	Terminal Timing (A)
36	19	–	Signal Ground
4	20	–	Receive Common
59	22	60	Send Data (B)
55	23	56	Send Timing (B)
2	24	1	Receive Data (B)
47	25	48	Request to Send (B)
6	26	5	Receive Timing (B)
38	27	37	Clear to Send (B)
10	29	9	Data Mode (B)
34	30	33	Terminal Ready (B)
14	31	13	Receiver Ready (B)
51	35	52	Terminal Timing (B)
57	37	–	Send Common
26 to 25	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

**RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE Cable Pinout****Table 60: RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DC-37 (DB-37) Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
1	4	2	Send Data (A)
56	5	55	Send Timing (A)

**Table 60: RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE Cable Pinout** *(continued)*

LFH-60 Pin	DC-37 (DB-37) Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
60	6	59	Receive Data (A)
37	7	38	Request to Send (A)
52	8	51	Receive Timing (A)
48	9	47	Clear to Send (A)
45	10	–	Local Loopback
33	11	34	Data Mode (A)
9	12	10	Terminal Ready (A)
13	13	14	Receive Ready (A)
5	17	6	Terminal Timing (A)
36	19	–	Signal Ground
4	20	–	Receive Common
2	22	1	Send Data (B)
55	23	56	Send Timing (B)
59	24	60	Receive Data (B)
38	25	37	Request to Send (B)
51	26	52	Receive Timing (B)
47	27	48	Clear to Send (B)
34	29	33	Data Mode (B)
10	30	9	Terminal Ready (B)
14	31	13	Receiver Ready (B)
6	35	5	Terminal Timing (B)
57	37	–	Send Common
26 to 25	–	–	–

**EIA-530A DTE Cable Pinout****Table 61: EIA-530A DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
60	2	59	Transmit Data (A)
1	3	2	Receive Data (A)
48	4	47	Request to Send (A)
37	5	38	Clear to Send (A)
9	6	–	Data Set Ready (A)
57	7	–	Signal Ground
13	8	14	Received Line Signal Detector (A)
6	9	5	Receive Clock (B)
14	10	13	Received Line Signal Detector (B)
51	11	52	Terminal Timing (B)
55	12	56	Transmit Clock (B)
38	13	37	Clear to Send (B)
59	14	60	Transmit Data (B)
56	15	55	Transmit Clock (A)
2	16	1	Receive Data (B)
5	17	6	Receive Clock (A)
41	18	–	Local Loopback
47	19	48	Request to Send (B)
33	20	–	Data Terminal Ready (A)
4	23	–	Signal Ground
52	24	51	Terminal Timing (A)
26 to 25	–	–	–
30 to 29	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–



**EIA-530A DCE Cable Pinout****Table 62: EIA-530A DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
1	2	2	Transmit Data (A)
60	3	59	Receive Data (A)
37	4	38	Request to Send (A)
48	5	47	Clear to Send (A)
33	6	–	Data Set Ready (A)
57	7	–	Signal Ground
13	8	14	Received Line Signal Detector (A)
51	9	52	Receive Clock (B)
14	10	13	Received Line Signal Detector (B)
6	11	5	Terminal Timing (B)
55	12	56	Transmit Clock (B)
47	13	48	Clear to Send (B)
2	14	1	Transmit Data (B)
56	15	55	Transmit Clock (A)
59	16	60	Receive Data (B)
52	17	51	Receive Clock (A)
45	18	–	Local Loopback
38	19	37	Request to Send (B)
9	20	–	Data Terminal Ready (A)
4	23	–	Signal Ground
5	24	6	Terminal Timing (A)
26 to 25	–	–	–
30 to 29	–	–	–

## V.35 DTE Cable Pinout

**Table 63: V.35 DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	M/34 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	A	–	Frame Ground
57	B	–	Signal Ground
48	C	–	Request to Send
37	D	–	Clear to Send
9	E	–	Data Set Ready
13	F	–	Received Line Signal Detector
33	H	–	Data Terminal Ready
41	K	–	Test Mode
60	P	59	Transmit Data (A)
1	R	2	Receive Data (A)
59	S	60	Transmit Data (B)
2	T	1	Receive Data (B)
52	U	51	Terminal Timing (A)
5	V	6	Receive Timing (A)
51	W	52	Terminal Timing (B)
6	X	5	Receive Timing (B)
56	Y	55	Transmit Timing (A)
55	AA	56	Transmit Timing (B)
22 to 21	–	–	–
26 to 25	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

### V.35 DCE Cable Pinout

**Table 64: V.35 DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	M/34 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	A	–	Frame Ground
57	B	–	Signal Ground
37	C	–	Request to Send
48	D	–	Clear to Send
33	E	–	Data Set Ready
13	F	–	Received Line Signal Detector
9	H	–	Data Terminal Ready
45	K	–	Test Mode
1	P	2	Transmit Data (A)
60	R	59	Receive Data (A)
2	S	1	Transmit Data (B)
59	T	60	Receive Data (B)
5	U	6	Terminal Timing (A)
52	V	51	Receive Timing (A)
6	W	5	Terminal Timing (B)
51	X	52	Receive Timing (B)
56	Y	55	Transmit Timing (A)
55	AA	56	Transmit Timing (B)
22 to 21	–	–	–
26 to 25	–	–	–

### X.21 DTE Cable Pinout

**Table 65: X.21 DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-15 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground

**Table 65: X.21 DTE Cable Pinout** *(continued)*

LFH-60 Pin	DB-15 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
60	2	59	Transmit Data (A)
48	3	47	Control (A)
1	4	2	Receive (A)
37	5	38	Indicate (A)
5	6	6	Signal Element Timing (A)
57	8	–	Signal Ground
59	9	60	Transmit Data (B)
47	10	48	Control (B)
2	11	1	Receive (B)
38	12	37	Indicate (B)
6	13	5	Signal Element Timing (B)
30 to 29	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

## X.21 DCE Cable Pinout

**Table 66: X.21 DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-15 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
1	2	2	Transmit Data (A)
37	3	38	Control (A)
60	4	59	Receive (A)
48	5	47	Indicate (A)
52	6	51	Signal Element Timing (A)
57	8	–	Signal Ground
2	9	1	Transmit Data (B)
38	10	37	Control (B)
59	11	60	Receive (B)

**Table 66: X.21 DCE Cable Pinout** *(continued)*

LFH-60 Pin	DB-15 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
47	12	48	Indicate (B)
51	13	52	Signal Element Timing (B)
30 to 29	–	–	–

## Fast Ethernet RJ-45 Connector Pinout

Table 67 on page 185 describes the Fast Ethernet RJ-45 connector pinout information.



**NOTE:** Either a straight-through or cross-over cable can be used to connect to the interface.

**Table 67: Fast Ethernet RJ-45 Connector Pinout**

Pin	Signal
1	TX +
2	TX-
3	RX +
4	Termination network
5	Termination network
6	RX-
7	Termination network
8	Termination network

## Chassis Console Port Pinouts

The console port on a J-series Services Router chassis has an RJ-45 connector. Table 68 on page 186 provides RJ-45 chassis console connector pinout information. An RJ-45 cable is supplied with the router.

To connect the console port to an external management device, you need an RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter, which is also supplied with the router.

**Table 68: RJ-45 Chassis Console Connector Pinout**

Pin	Signal	Description
1	RTS Output	Request to Send
2	DTR Output	Data Terminal Ready
3	TxD Output	Transmit Data
4	GND	Chassis Ground
5	GND	Chassis Ground
6	RxD Input	Receive Data
7	DSR Input	Data Set Ready
8	CTS Input	Clear to Send

Table 69 on page 186 describes the DB-9 connector pinouts.

**Table 69: DB-9 Console Connector Pinout**

Pin	Signal	Direction	Description
1	DCD	< –	Carrier Detect
2	RxD	< –	Receive Data
3	TxD	– >	Transmit Data
4	DTR	– >	Data Terminal Ready
5	Ground	—	Signal Ground
6	DSR	< –	Data Set Ready
7	RTS	– >	Request To Send
8	CTS	< –	Clear To Send
9	RING	< –	Ring Indicator

## E1 and T1 RJ-48 Cable Pinouts

The E1 and T1 PIMs use an RJ-48 cable, which is not supplied with the PIM.



**CAUTION:** To maintain agency approvals, use only a properly constructed, shielded cable.

Table 70 on page 187 through Table 73 on page 188 describe the RJ-48 connector pinouts.

**Table 70: RJ-48 Connector to RJ-48 Connector (Straight) Pinout**

RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data Numbering Form)	RJ-48 Pin	
	(Data Numbering Form)	Signal
1	1	RX, Ring, –
2	2	RX, Tip, +
4	4	TX, Ring, –
5	5	TX, Tip, +
3	3	Shield/Return/Ground
6	6	Shield/Return/Ground
7	No connect	No connect
8	No connect	No connect

**Table 71: RJ-48 Connector to RJ-48 Connector (Crossover) Pinout**

RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data Numbering Form)	RJ-48 Pin	
	(Data Numbering Form)	Signal
1	4	RX/Ring/– <--> TX/Ring/–
2	5	RX/Tip/+ <--> TX/Tip/+
4	1	TX/Ring/– <--> RX/Ring/–
5	2	TX/Tip/+ <--> RX/Tip/+
3	3	Shield/Return/Ground
6	6	Shield/Return/Ground
7	No connect	No connect
8	No connect	No connect

**Table 72: RJ-48 Connector to DB-15 Connector (Straight) Pinout**

RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data Numbering Form)	DB-15 Pin (Data Numbering Form)	Signal
1	11	RX/Ring/- <--> RX/Ring/-
2	3	RX/Tip/+ <--> RX/Tip/+
4	9	TX/Ring/- <--> TX/Ring/-
5	1	TX/Tip/+ <--> TX/Tip/+
3	4	Shield/Return/Ground
6	2	Shield/Return/Ground
7	No connect	No connect
8	No connect	No connect
9	No connect	No connect
10	No connect	No connect
11	No connect	No connect
12	No connect	No connect
13	No connect	No connect
14	No connect	No connect
15	No connect	No connect

**Table 73: RJ-48 Connector to DB-15 Connector (Crossover) Pinout**

RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data Numbering Form)	DB-15 Pin (Data Numbering Form)	Signal
1	9	RX/Ring/- <--> TX/Ring/-
2	1	RX/Tip/+ <--> TX/Tip/+
4	11	TX/Ring/- <--> RX/Ring/-
5	3	TX/Tip/+ <--> RX/Tip/+
3	4	Shield/Return/Ground
6	2	Shield/Return/Ground



**Table 73: RJ-48 Connector to DB-15 Connector (Crossover) Pinout** *(continued)*

RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data Numbering Form)	DB-15 Pin (Data Numbering Form)	Signal
7	No connect	No connect
8	No connect	No connect
9	No connect	No connect
10	No connect	No connect
11	No connect	No connect
12	No connect	No connect
13	No connect	No connect
14	No connect	No connect
15	No connect	No connect

## E3 and T3 BNC Connector Pinout

The E3 and T3 PIMs each use two BNC connectors—one for transmitting data (TX) and one for receiving data (RX).

## ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout

The 1-port ADSL 2/2 + Annex A and Annex B PIMs use an RJ-11 cable, which is not supplied with the PIMs. The 2-port G.SHDSL Annex A and Annex B PIM also uses an RJ-11 cable, which is not supplied with the PIM. Table 74 on page 189 describes the RJ-11 connector pinout.

**Table 74: ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout**

Pin	Signal
1	No connect
2	No connect
3	RJ P –Tip
4	RJ N –Ring
5	No connect
6	No connect

## ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout

---

The 1-port and 4-port ISDN PIMs use an RJ-45 cable, which is not supplied with the PIMs. Table 75 on page 190 describes the RJ-45 connector pinout.

**Table 75: ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout**

Pin	Signal
1	No connect
2	No connect
3	RJ_SX_P
4	RJ_SR_P
5	RJ_SR_N
6	RJ_SX_N
7	No connect
8	No connect
9	Shielded
10	Shielded 2

## Chapter 13

# Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information

To install and use the Services Router safely, follow proper safety procedures. This chapter discusses the following safety and regulatory compliance information:

- Definition of Safety Warning Levels on page 191
- Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 193
- Agency Approvals on page 226
- Compliance Statements for Environmental Requirements on page 227
- Compliance Statements for EMC Requirements on page 227

## Definition of Safety Warning Levels

---

This manual uses the following three levels of safety warnings:



**NOTE:** You might find this information helpful in a particular situation, or might otherwise overlook it.

---



**CAUTION:** You need to observe the specified guidelines to avoid minor injury or discomfort to you, or severe damage to the Services Router.

---



**WARNING:** This symbol means danger. You are in a situation that could cause bodily injury. Before you work on any equipment, be aware of the hazards involved with electrical circuitry and be familiar with standard practices for preventing accidents.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Dit waarschuwingssymbool betekent gevaar. U verkeert in een situatie die lichamelijk letsel kan veroorzaken. Voordat u aan enige apparatuur gaat werken, dient u zich bewust te zijn van de bij elektrische schakelingen betrokken risico's en dient u op de hoogte te zijn van standaard maatregelen om ongelukken te voorkomen.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Tämä varoitusmerkki merkitsee vaaraa. Olet tilanteessa, joka voi johtaa ruumiinvammaan. Ennen kuin työskentelet minkään laitteiston parissa, ota selvää sähkökytkentöihin liittyvistä vaaroista ja tavanomaisista onnettomuuksien ehkäisykeinoista.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Ce symbole d'avertissement indique un danger. Vous vous trouvez dans une situation pouvant causer des blessures ou des dommages corporels. Avant de travailler sur un équipement, soyez conscient des dangers posés par les circuits électriques et familiarisez-vous avec les procédures couramment utilisées pour éviter les accidents.

---



**WARNING: Warnung** Dieses Warnsymbol bedeutet Gefahr. Sie befinden sich in einer Situation, die zu einer Körperverletzung führen könnte. Bevor Sie mit der Arbeit an irgendeinem Gerät beginnen, seien Sie sich der mit elektrischen Stromkreisen verbundenen Gefahren und der Standardpraktiken zur Vermeidung von Unfällen bewußt.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Questo simbolo di avvertenza indica un pericolo. La situazione potrebbe causare infortuni alle persone. Prima di lavorare su qualsiasi apparecchiatura, occorre conoscere i pericoli relativi ai circuiti elettrici ed essere al corrente delle pratiche standard per la prevenzione di incidenti.

---



**WARNING: Advarsel** Dette varselsymbolet betyr fare. Du befinner deg i en situasjon som kan føre til personskade. Før du utfører arbeid på utstyr, må du være oppmerksom på de faremomentene som elektriske kretser innebærer, samt gjøre deg kjent med vanlig praksis når det gjelder å unngå ulykker.

---



**WARNING: Aviso** Este símbolo de aviso indica perigo. Encontra-se numa situação que lhe poderá causar danos físicos. Antes de começar a trabalhar com qualquer equipamento, familiarize-se com os perigos relacionados com circuitos eléctricos, e com quaisquer práticas comuns que possam prevenir possíveis acidentes.

---



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Este símbolo de aviso significa peligro. Existe riesgo para su integridad física. Antes de manipular cualquier equipo, considerar los riesgos que entraña la corriente eléctrica y familiarizarse con los procedimientos estándar de prevención de accidentes.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Denna varningssymbol signalerar fara. Du befinner dig i en situation som kan leda till personskada. Innan du utför arbete på någon utrustning måste du vara medveten om farorna med elkretsar och känna till vanligt förfarande för att förebygga skador.

---

## **Safety Guidelines and Warnings**

---

This section lists the following safety guidelines and warnings for installing, operating, and maintaining a Services Router:

- General Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 193
- Electrical Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 196
- Installation Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 210
- Laser and LED Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 215
- Maintenance and Operational Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 219

### **General Safety Guidelines and Warnings**

The following guidelines help ensure your safety and protect the Services Router from damage. The list of guidelines might not address all potentially hazardous situations in your working environment, so be alert and exercise good judgment at all times.

- Perform only the procedures explicitly described in this manual. Make sure that only authorized service personnel perform other system services.
- Keep the area around the chassis clear and free from dust before, during, and after installation.
- Keep tools away from areas where people could trip over them while walking.
- Do not wear loose clothing or jewelry, such as rings, bracelets, or chains, which could become caught in the chassis.
- Wear safety glasses if you are working under any conditions that could be hazardous to your eyes.
- Do not perform any actions that create a potential hazard to people or make the equipment unsafe.
- Never attempt to lift an object that is too heavy for one person to handle.
- Never install or manipulate wiring during electrical storms.
- Never install electrical jacks in wet locations unless the jacks are specifically designed for wet environments.
- Operate the Services Router only when it is properly grounded.
- The separate protective earthing terminal provided on this product shall be permanently connected to earth.
- Replace fuses only with fuses of the same type and rating.
- Do not open or remove chassis covers or sheet metal parts unless instructions are provided in this manual. Such an action could cause severe electrical shock.
- Do not push or force any objects through any opening in the chassis frame. Such an action could result in electrical shock or fire.
- Avoid spilling liquid onto the Services Router chassis or onto any Services Router component. Such an action could cause electrical shock or damage the Services Router.
- Avoid touching uninsulated electrical wires or terminals that have not been disconnected from their power source. Such an action could cause electrical shock.

In addition, observe the warnings and guidelines in the following sections.

### Qualified Personnel Warning



**WARNING:** Only trained and qualified personnel should install or replace the Services Router.

**Waarschuwing** Installatie en reparaties mogen uitsluitend door getraind en bevoegd personeel uitgevoerd worden.

**Varoituis** Ainoastaan koulutettu ja pätevä henkilökunta saa asentaa tai vaihtaa tämän laitteen.

**Attention** Tout installation ou remplacement de l'appareil doit être réalisé par du personnel qualifié et compétent.

**Warnung** Gerät nur von geschultem, qualifiziertem Personal installieren oder auswechseln lassen.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Solo personale addestrato e qualificato deve essere autorizzato ad installare o sostituire questo apparecchio.

**Advarsel** Kun kvalifisert personell med riktig opplæring bør montere eller bytte ut dette utstyret.

**Aviso** Este equipamento deverá ser instalado ou substituído apenas por pessoal devidamente treinado e qualificado.

**¡Atención!** Estos equipos deben ser instalados y reemplazados exclusivamente por personal técnico adecuadamente preparado y capacitado.

**Varning!** Denna utrustning ska endast installeras och bytas ut av utbildad och kvalificerad personal.

---

### Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage

Many Services Router hardware components are sensitive to damage from static electricity. Some components can be impaired by voltages as low as 30 V. You can easily generate potentially damaging static voltages whenever you handle plastic or foam packing material or if you move components across plastic or carpets. Observe the following guidelines to minimize the potential for electrostatic discharge (ESD) damage, which can cause intermittent or complete component failures:

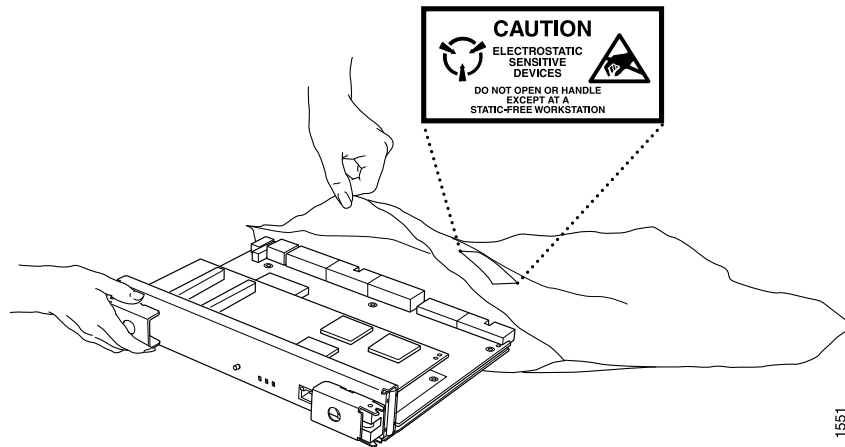
- Always use an ESD wrist strap or ankle strap, and make sure that it is in direct contact with your skin.
- 



**CAUTION:** For safety, periodically check the resistance value of the ESD strap. The measurement should be in the range of 1 to 10 Mohms.

---

- When handling any component that is removed from the chassis, make sure the equipment end of your ESD strap is attached to one of the electrostatic discharge points on the chassis, which are shown in Figure 8 on page 22 .
- Avoid contact between the component and your clothing. ESD voltages emitted from clothing can still damage components.
- When removing or installing a component, always place it component-side up on an antistatic surface, in an antistatic card rack, or in an electrostatic bag (see Figure 73 on page 196). If you are returning a component, place it in an electrostatic bag before packing it.

**Figure 73: Place a Component into an Electrostatic Bag**

## **Electrical Safety Guidelines and Warnings**

When working on equipment powered by electricity, follow the guidelines described in the following sections:

- General Electrical Safety Guidelines on page 196
- AC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines on page 197
- DC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines on page 198
- Power Sources for Redundant Power Supplies on page 199
- DC Power Disconnection Warning on page 199
- DC Power Grounding Requirements and Warning on page 201
- DC Power Wiring Sequence Warning on page 201
- DC Power Wiring Terminations Warning on page 203
- Grounded Equipment Warning on page 204
- Warning Statement for Norway and Sweden on page 205
- In Case of Electrical Accident on page 205
- Multiple Power Supplies Disconnection Warning on page 206
- Power Disconnection Warning on page 207
- TN Power Warning on page 208
- Telecommunication Line Cord Warning on page 209

### **General Electrical Safety Guidelines**

- Install the Services Router in compliance with the following local, national, or international electrical codes:



- United States—National Fire Protection Association (NFPA 70), United States National Electrical Code.
- Canada—Canadian Electrical Code, Part 1, CSA C22.1.
- Other countries—International Electromechanical Commission (IEC) 60364, Part 1 through Part 7.
- Evaluated to the TN power system.
- Locate the emergency power-off switch for the room in which you are working so that if an electrical accident occurs, you can quickly turn off the power.
- Do not work alone if potentially hazardous conditions exist anywhere in your workspace.
- Never assume that power is disconnected from a circuit. Always check the circuit before starting to work.
- Carefully look for possible hazards in your work area, such as moist floors, ungrounded power extension cords, and missing safety grounds.
- Operate the Services Router within marked electrical ratings and product usage instructions.
- For the Services Router and peripheral equipment to function safely and correctly, use the cables and connectors specified for the attached peripheral equipment, and make certain they are in good condition.

Many Services Router components can be removed and replaced without powering down or disconnecting power to the Services Router, as detailed in elsewhere in this manual. Never install equipment if it appears damaged.

### **AC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines**

The following electrical safety guidelines apply to AC-powered routers:

- AC-powered routers are shipped with a three-wire electrical cord with a grounding-type plug that fits only a grounding-type power outlet. Do not circumvent this safety feature. Equipment grounding should comply with local and national electrical codes.
- You must provide an external Listed circuit breaker rated minimum 15 A in the building installation.
- The power cord serves as the main disconnecting device. The socket outlet must be near the router and be easily accessible.
- The cores in the mains lead are colored in accordance with the following code:
  - Green and yellow—Earth
  - Blue—Neutral

- Brown—Live
- When a router is equipped with two AC power supplies, both power cords (one for each power supply) must be unplugged to completely disconnect power to the router.
- Note the following warnings printed on the AC power supply faceplate:
  - To completely de-energize the system disconnect maximum of 2 power cordsets.
  - Apparaten skall anslutas till jordat uttag när den ansluts till ett nätverk. [Swedish]

#### **Power Cable Warning (Japanese)**



**WARNING:** The attached power cable is only for this product. Do not use the cable for another product.

### 注意

附属の電源コードセットはこの製品専用です。  
他の電気機器には使用しないでください。

9017253

#### **DC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines**

The following electrical safety guidelines apply to a DC-powered router:

- A DC-powered router is equipped with a DC terminal block that is rated for the power requirements of a maximally configured router. To supply sufficient power, terminate the DC input wiring on a facility DC source capable of supplying at least 8 A @ -48 VDC. Incorporate an easily accessible disconnect device into the facility wiring. Be sure to connect the ground wire or conduit to a solid office (earth) ground. A closed loop ring is recommended for terminating the ground conductor at the ground stud.
- Run two wires from the circuit breaker box to a source of 48 VDC.
- In the United States, a restricted access area is one in accordance with Articles 110-16, 110-17, and 110-18 of the National Electrical Code ANSI/NFPA 70.



**NOTE:** Primary overcurrent protection is provided by the building circuit breaker. This breaker should protect against excess currents, short circuits, and earth faults in accordance with NEC ANSI/NFPA70.

- Ensure that the polarity of the DC input wiring is correct. Under certain conditions, connections with reversed polarity might trip the primary circuit breaker or damage the equipment.
- For personal safety, connect the green and yellow wire to safety (earth) ground at both the router and the supply side of the DC wiring.
- The marked input voltage of –48 VDC for a DC-powered router is the nominal voltage associated with the battery circuit, and any higher voltages are only to be associated with float voltages for the charging function.
- Because the router is a positive ground system, you must connect the positive lead to the terminal labeled RTN, the negative lead to the terminal labeled –48 VDC, and the earth ground to the chassis grounding points.

### Power Sources for Redundant Power Supplies

If your J6300 Services Router includes an optional redundant DC power supply, connect each of the two power supplies to different input power sources. Failure to do so makes the router susceptible to total power failure if one of the power supplies fails.

### 冗余电源

如果 Juniper Networks 设备包含一个可选的冗余电源，请将两个电源连接到不同的输入电源。不这样做的结果是 Juniper Networks 设备一路供电出问题导致全部的电源故障。

### DC Power Disconnection Warning



**WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, ensure that power is removed from the DC circuit. To ensure that all power is off, locate the circuit breaker on the panel board that services the DC circuit, switch the circuit breaker to the OFF position, and tape the switch handle of the circuit breaker in the OFF position.

**Waarschuwing** Voordat u een van de onderstaande procedures uitvoert, dient u te controleren of de stroom naar het gelijkstroom circuit uitgeschakeld is. Om u ervan te verzekeren dat alle stroom UIT is geschakeld, kiest u op het schakelbord de stroomverbreker die het gelijkstroom circuit bedient, draait de stroomverbreker naar de UIT positie en plakt de schakelaarhendel van de stroomverbreker met plakband in de UIT positie vast.

**Varoitus** Varmista, että tasavirtapiirissä ei ole virtaa ennen seuraavien toimenpiteiden suorittamista. Varmistaaksesi, että virta on KATKAISTU täysin, paikanna tasavirrasta huolehtivassa kojetaulussa sijaitseva suojakytkin, käännä suojakytkin

KATKAISTU-asentoon ja teippaa suojakytkimen varsi niin, että se pysyy KATKAISTU-asennossa.



**WARNING: Attention** Avant de pratiquer l'une quelconque des procédures ci-dessous, vérifier que le circuit en courant continu n'est plus sous tension. Pour en être sûr, localiser le disjoncteur situé sur le panneau de service du circuit en courant continu, placer le disjoncteur en position fermée (OFF) et, à l'aide d'un ruban adhésif, bloquer la poignée du disjoncteur en position OFF.

**Warnung** Vor Ausführung der folgenden Vorgänge ist sicherzustellen, daß die Gleichstromschaltung keinen Strom erhält. Um sicherzustellen, daß sämtlicher Strom abgestellt ist, machen Sie auf der Schalttafel den Unterbrecher für die Gleichstromschaltung ausfindig, stellen Sie den Unterbrecher auf AUS, und kleben Sie den Schaltergriff des Unterbrechers mit Klebeband in der AUS-Stellung fest.

**Avvertenza** Prima di svolgere una qualsiasi delle procedure seguenti, verificare che il circuito CC non sia alimentato. Per verificare che tutta l'alimentazione sia scollegata (OFF), individuare l'interruttore automatico sul quadro strumenti che alimenta il circuito CC, mettere l'interruttore in posizione OFF e fissarlo con nastro adesivo in tale posizione.

---

---



**WARNING: Advarsel** Før noen av disse prosedyrene utføres, kontroller at strømmen er frakoblet likestrømkretsen. Sørg for at all strøm er slått AV. Dette gjøres ved å lokalisere strømbryteren på brytertavlen som betjener likestrømkretsen, slå strømbryteren AV og teipe bryterhåndtaket på strømbryteren i AV-stilling.

**Aviso** Antes de executar um dos seguintes procedimentos, certifique-se que desligou a fonte de alimentação de energia do circuito de corrente contínua. Para se assegurar que toda a corrente foi DESLIGADA, localize o disjuntor no painel que serve o circuito de corrente contínua e coloque-o na posição OFF (Desligado), segurando nessa posição a manivela do interruptor do disjuntor com fita isoladora.

**¡Atención!** Antes de proceder con los siguientes pasos, comprobar que la alimentación del circuito de corriente continua (CC) esté cortada (OFF). Para asegurarse de que toda la alimentación esté cortada (OFF), localizar el interruptor automático en el panel que alimenta al circuito de corriente continua, cambiar el interruptor automático a la posición de Apagado (OFF), y sujetar con cinta la palanca del interruptor automático en posición de Apagado (OFF).

**Varning!** Innan du utför någon av följande procedurer måste du kontrollera att strömförsörjningen till likströmskretsen är bruten. Kontrollera att all strömförsörjning är BRUTEN genom att slå AV det överspänningsskydd som skyddar likströmskretsen och tejpa fast överspänningsskyddets omkopplare i FRÅN-läget.

---

## DC Power Grounding Requirements and Warning

An insulated grounding conductor that is identical in size to the grounded and ungrounded branch circuit supply conductors, but is identifiable by green and yellow stripes, is installed as part of the branch circuit that supplies the unit. The grounding conductor is a separately derived system at the supply transformer or motor generator set.

For further information, see “Chassis Grounding” on page 96 and “DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications” on page 86.



**WARNING:** When installing the router, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.

**Waarschuwing** Bij de installatie van het toestel moet de aardverbinding altijd het eerste worden gemaakt en het laatste worden losgemaakt.

**Varoitus** Laitetta asennettaessa on maahan yhdistäminen aina tehtävä ensiksi ja maadoituksen irti kytkeminen viimeiseksi.

**Attention** Lors de l'installation de l'appareil, la mise à la terre doit toujours être connectée en premier et déconnectée en dernier.

**Warnung** Der Erdanschluß muß bei der Installation der Einheit immer zuerst hergestellt und zuletzt abgetrennt werden.

**Avvertenza** In fase di installazione dell'unità, eseguire sempre per primo il collegamento a massa e disconnetterlo per ultimo.

**Advarsel** Når enheten installeres, må jordledningen alltid tilkobles først og frakobles sist.

**Aviso** Ao instalar a unidade, a ligação à terra deverá ser sempre a primeira a ser ligada, e a última a ser desligada.

**¡Atención!** Al instalar el equipo, conectar la tierra la primera y desconectarla la última.

**Varning!** Vid installation av enheten måste jordledningen alltid anslutas först och kopplas bort sist.

---

## DC Power Wiring Sequence Warning



**WARNING:** Wire the DC power supply using the appropriate lugs. When connecting power, the proper wiring sequence is ground to ground, + RTN to + RTN, then -48 V to -48 V. When disconnecting power, the proper wiring sequence is -48 V to -48 V, + RTN to + RTN, then ground to ground. Note that the ground wire should always be connected first and disconnected last.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** De juiste bedradingsvolgorde verbonden is aarde naar aarde, + RTN naar + RTN, en -48 V naar - 48 V. De juiste bedradingsvolgorde losgemaakt is en -48 V naar - 48 V, + RTN naar + RTN, aarde naar aarde.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Oikea yhdistettävä kytkentäjäjestys on maajohto maajohtoon, + RTN varten + RTN, -48 V varten - 48 V. Oikea irrotettava kytkentäjäjestys on -48 V varten - 48 V, + RTN varten + RTN, maajohto maajohtoon.



**WARNING: Attention** Câblez l'alimentation CC En utilisant les crochets appropriés à l'extrémité de câblage. En reliant la puissance, l'ordre approprié de câblage est rectifié pour rectifier, + RTN à + RTN, puis -48 V à -48 V. En débranchant la puissance, l'ordre approprié de câblage est -48 V à -48 V, + RTN à + RTN, a alors rectifié pour rectifier. Notez que le fil de masse devrait toujours être relié d'abord et débranché pour la dernière fois. Notez que le fil de masse devrait toujours être relié d'abord et débranché pour la dernière fois.



**WARNING: Warnung** Verdrahten Sie die Gleichstrom-Versorgung mit den passenden Ansätzen am Verdrahtung Ende. Wenn man Energie anschließt, wird die korrekte Verdrahtung. Reihenfolge gerieben, um, + RTN zu + RTN, dann -48 V bis -48 V zu reiben. Wenn sie Energie trennt, ist die korrekte Verdrahtung Reihenfolge -48 V bis -48 V, + RTN zu + RTN, rieb dann, um zu reiben. Beachten Sie, daß der Erdungsdraht immer zuerst angeschlossen werden und zuletzt getrennt werden sollte.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Mostra la morsettiera dell'alimentatore CC. Cablare l'alimentatore CC usando i connettori adatti all'estremità del cablaggio, come illustrato. La corretta sequenza di cablaggio è da massa a massa, da positivo a positivo (da linea ad L) e da negativo a negativo (da neutro a N). Tenere presente che il filo di massa deve sempre venire collegato per primo e scollegato per ultimo.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Riktig tilkoples tilkopplingssekvens er jord til jord, + RTN til + RTN, -48 V til - 48 V. Riktig frakoples tilkopplingssekvens er -48 V til - 48 V, + RTN til + RTN, jord til jord.



**WARNING: Aviso** Ate con alambre la fuente de potencia cc Usando los terminales apropiados en el extremo del cableado. Al conectar potencia, la secuencia apropiada del cableado se muele para moler, + RTN a + RTN, entonces -48 V a -48 V. Al desconectar potencia, la secuencia apropiada del cableado es -48 V a -48 V, + RTN a + RTN, entonces molió para moler. Observe que el alambre de tierra se debe

conectar siempre primero y desconectar por último. Observe que el alambre de tierra se debe conectar siempre primero y desconectar por último.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Wire a fonte de alimentação de DC Usando os talões apropriados na extremidade da fiação. Ao conectar a potência, a seqüência apropriada da fiação é moída para moer, + RTN a + RTN, então -48 V a -48 V. Ao desconectar a potência, a seqüência apropriada da fiação é -48 V a -48 V, + RTN a + RTN, moeu então para moer. Anote que o fio à terra deve sempre ser conectado primeiramente e desconectado por último. Anote que o fio à terra deve sempre ser conectado primeiramente e desconectado por último.

**Warning!** Korrekt kopplingssekvens ar jord till jord, + RTN till + RTN, -48 V till - 48 V. Korrekt kopplas kopplingssekvens ar -48 V till - 48 V, + RTN till + RTN, jord till jord.

### DC Power Wiring Terminations Warning



**WARNING:** When stranded wiring is required, use approved wiring terminations, such as closed-loop or spade-type with upturned lugs. These terminations should be the appropriate size for the wires and should clamp both the insulation and conductor.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Wanneer geslagen bedrading vereist is, dient u bedrading te gebruiken die voorzien is van goedgekeurde aansluitingspunten, zoals het gesloten-lus type of het grijperschop type waarbij de aansluitpunten omhoog wijzen. Deze aansluitpunten dienen de juiste maat voor de draden te hebben en dienen zowel de isolatie als de geleider vast te klemmen.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Jos säikeellinen johdin on tarpeen, käytä hyväksyttyä johdinliitääntää, esimerkiksi suljettua silmukkaa tai kourumaista liitääntää, jossa on ylöspäin käännetyt kiinnityskorvat. Tällaisten liitääntöjen tulee olla kooltaan johtimiin sopivia ja niiden tulee puristaa yhteen sekä eristeen että johdinosan.



**WARNING: Attention** Quand des fils torsadés sont nécessaires, utiliser des douilles terminales homologuées telles que celles à circuit fermé ou du type à plage ouverte avec cosses rebroussées. Ces douilles terminales doivent être de la taille qui convient aux fils et doivent être refermées sur la gaine isolante et sur le conducteur.



**WARNING: Warnung** Wenn Litzenverdrahtung erforderlich ist, sind zugelassene Verdrahtungsabschlüsse, z.B. für einen geschlossenen Regelkreis oder gabelförmig, mit nach oben gerichteten Kabelschuhen zu verwenden. Diese Abschlüsse sollten die angemessene Größe für die Drähte haben und sowohl die Isolierung als auch den Leiter festklemmen.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Quando occorre usare trecce, usare connettori omologati, come quelli a occhiello o a forcilla con linguette rivolte verso l'alto. I connettori devono avere la misura adatta per il cablaggio e devono serrare sia l'isolante che il conduttore.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Hvis det er nødvendig med flertrådede ledninger, brukes godkjente ledningsavslutninger, som for eksempel lukket sløyfe eller spadetype med oppoverbøyde kabelsko. Disse avslutningene skal ha riktig størrelse i forhold til ledningene, og skal klemme sammen både isolasjonen og ledere.



**WARNING: Aviso** Quando forem requeridas montagens de instalação eléctrica de cabo torcido, use terminações de cabo aprovadas, tais como, terminações de cabo em circuito fechado e planas com terminais de orelha voltados para cima. Estas terminações de cabo deverão ser do tamanho apropriado para os respectivos cabos, e deverão prender simultaneamente o isolamento e o fio condutor.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Cuando se necesite hilo trenzado, utilizar terminales para cables homologados, tales como las de tipo "bucle cerrado" o "espada", con las lengüetas de conexión vueltas hacia arriba. Estos terminales deberán ser del tamaño apropiado para los cables que se utilicen, y tendrán que sujetar tanto el aislante como el conductor.



**WARNING: Varning!** När flertrådiga ledningar krävs måste godkända ledningskontakter användas, t.ex. kabelsko av sluten eller öppen typ med uppåtvänd tapp. Storleken på dessa kontakter måste vara anpassad till ledningarna och måste kunna hålla både isoleringen och ledaren fastklämda.

### Grounded Equipment Warning



**WARNING:** The router is intended to be grounded. Ensure that the router is connected to earth ground during normal use.



**Waarschuwing** Deze apparatuur hoort geaard te worden. Zorg dat de host-computer tijdens normaal gebruik met aarde is verbonden.

**Varoitus** Tämä laitteisto on tarkoitettu maadoitettavaksi. Varmista, että isäntälaitte on yhdistetty maahan normaalikäytön aikana.

**Attention** Cet équipement doit être relié à la terre. S'assurer que l'appareil hôte est relié à la terre lors de l'utilisation normale.

**Warnung** Dieses Gerät muß geerdet werden. Stellen Sie sicher, daß das Host-Gerät während des normalen Betriebs an Erde gelegt ist.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Questa apparecchiatura deve essere collegata a massa. Accertarsi che il dispositivo host sia collegato alla massa di terra durante il normale utilizzo.

**Advarsel** Dette utstyret skal jordes. Forviss deg om vertsterminalen er jordet ved normalt bruk.

**Aviso** Este equipamento deverá estar ligado à terra. Certifique-se que o host se encontra ligado à terra durante a sua utilização normal.

**¡Atención!** Este equipo debe conectarse a tierra. Asegurarse de que el equipo principal esté conectado a tierra durante el uso normal.

**Varning!** Denna utrustning är avsedd att jordas. Se till att värdenheten är jordad vid normal användning.

---

### Warning Statement for Norway and Sweden



**WARNING:** The equipment must be connected to an earthed mains socket-outlet.

**Advarsel** Apparatet skal kobles til en jordet stikkontakt.

**Varning!** Apparaten skall anslutas till jordat nätuttag.

---

### In Case of Electrical Accident

If an electrical accident results in an injury, take the following actions in this order:

1. Use caution. Be aware of potentially hazardous conditions that could cause further injury.
2. Disconnect power from the Services Router.
3. If possible, send another person to get medical aid. Otherwise, assess the condition of the victim, then call for help.

### Multiple Power Supplies Disconnection Warning



**WARNING:** The J6300 Services Router has more than one power supply connection. All connections must be removed completely to remove power from the unit completely.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Deze J6300 eenheid heeft meer dan één stroomtoevoerverbinding; alle verbindingen moeten volledig worden verwijderd om de stroom van deze eenheid volledig te verwijderen.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Tässä laitteessa on useampia virtalähdekytkentöjä. Kaikki kytkennät on irrotettava kokonaan, jotta virta poistettaisiin täysin laitteesta.



**WARNING: Attention** Cette J6300 unité est équipée de plusieurs raccordements d'alimentation. Pour supprimer tout courant électrique de l'unité, tous les cordons d'alimentation doivent être débranchés.



**WARNING: Warnung** Diese J6300 Einheit verfügt über mehr als einen Stromanschluß; um Strom gänzlich von der Einheit fernzuhalten, müssen alle Stromzufuhren abgetrennt sein.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Questa J6300 unità ha più di una connessione per alimentatore elettrico; tutte le connessioni devono essere completamente rimosse per togliere l'elettricità dall'unità.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Denne J6300 enheten har mer enn én strømtilkobling. Alle tilkoblinger må kobles helt fra for å eliminere strøm fra enheten.



**WARNING: Aviso** Este J6300 dispositivo possui mais do que uma conexão de fonte de alimentação de energia; para poder remover a fonte de alimentação de energia, deverão ser desconectadas todas as conexões existentes.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Esta J6300 unidad tiene más de una conexión de suministros de alimentación; para eliminar la alimentación por completo, deben desconectarse completamente todas las conexiones.



**WARNING: Varning!** Denna J6300 enhet har mer än en strömförsörjningsanslutning; alla anslutningar måste vara helt avlägsnade innan strömtillförseln till enheten är fullständigt bruten.

---

### Power Disconnection Warning

---



**WARNING:** Before working on the router or near power supplies, unplug the power cord from an AC router.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Voordat u aan een frame of in de nabijheid van voedingen werkt, dient u bij wisselstroom toestellen de stekker van het netsnoer uit het stopcontact te halen.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Kytke irti vaihtovirtalaitteiden virtajohto, ennen kuin teet mitään asennuspohjalle tai työskentelet virtalähteiden läheisyydessä.



**WARNING: Attention** Avant de travailler sur un châssis ou à proximité d'une alimentation électrique, débrancher le cordon d'alimentation des unités en courant alternatif.



**WARNING: Warnung** Bevor Sie an einem Chassis oder in der Nähe von Netzgeräten arbeiten, ziehen Sie bei Wechselstromeinheiten das Netzkabel ab bzw.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Prima di lavorare su un telaio o intorno ad alimentatori, scollegare il cavo di alimentazione sulle unità CA.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Før det utføres arbeid på kabinettet eller det arbeides i nærheten av strømforsyningsenheter, skal strømledningen trekkes ut på vekselstrømsenheter.



**WARNING: Aviso** Antes de trabalhar num chassis, ou antes de trabalhar perto de unidades de fornecimento de energia, desligue o cabo de alimentação nas unidades de corrente alternada.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Antes de manipular el chasis de un equipo o trabajar cerca de una fuente de alimentación, desenchufar el cable de alimentación en los equipos de corriente alterna (CA).



**WARNING: Varning!** Innan du arbetar med ett chassi eller nära strömförsörjningsenheter skall du för växelströmsenheter dra ur nätsladden.

### TN Power Warning



**WARNING:** The router is designed to work with a TN power system.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Het apparaat is ontworpen om te functioneren met TN energiesystemen.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Kojе on suunniteltu toimimaan TN-sähkövoimajärjestelmien yhteydessä.



**WARNING: Attention** Ce dispositif a été conçu pour fonctionner avec des systèmes d'alimentation TN.



**WARNING: Warnung** Das Gerät ist für die Verwendung mit TN-Stromsystemen ausgelegt.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Il dispositivo è stato progettato per l'uso con sistemi di alimentazione TN.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Utstyret er utfomet til bruk med TN-strømsystemer.



**WARNING: Aviso** O dispositivo foi criado para operar com sistemas de corrente TN.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** El equipo está diseñado para trabajar con sistemas de alimentación tipo TN.



**WARNING: Varning!** Enheten är konstruerad för användning tillsammans med elkraftssystem av TN-typ.

### Telecommunication Line Cord Warning



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of fire, use only No. 26 AWG or larger UL-listed or CSA-certified telecommunication line cord.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Om brandgevaar te reduceren, dient slechts telecommunicatielijnsnoer nr. 26 AWG of groter gebruikt te worden.



**WARNING: Varoit** Tulipalovaaran vähentämiseksi käytä ainoastaan nro 26 AWG-tai paksumpaa tietoliikennejohdinta.



**WARNING: Attention** Pour réduire les risques d'incendie, n'utiliser que des cordons de lignes de télécommunications de type AWG n° 26 ou plus larges.



**WARNING: Warnung** Zur Reduzierung der Feuergefahr eine Fernmeldeleitungsschnur der Größe 26 AWG oder größer verwenden.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Per ridurre il rischio di incendio, usare solo un cavo per linea di telecomunicazioni di sezione 0,12 mm<sup>2</sup> (26 AWG) o maggiore.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Bruk kun AWG nr. 26 eller telekommunikasjonsledninger med større dimensjon for å redusere faren for brann.



**WARNING: Aviso** Para reduzir o risco de incêndio, utilize apenas terminais de fio de telecomunicações N°. 26 AWG ou superiores.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Para reducir el riesgo de incendios, usar sólo líneas de telecomunicaciones de calibre No. 26 AWG o más gruesas.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** För att minska brandrisken skall endast Nr. 26 AWG eller större telekommunikationsledning användas.

---

## Installation Safety Guidelines and Warnings

Observe the following guidelines and warnings before and during Services Router installation:

- Chassis Lifting Guidelines on page 210
- Installation Instructions Warning on page 210
- Rack-Mounting Requirements and Warnings on page 211
- Ramp Warning on page 215

### Chassis Lifting Guidelines

The weight of a fully populated chassis is approximately 12 lbs (5.4 kg) for a J2300 Services Router, 21 lbs (9.5 kg) for a J4300 Services Router, and 24 lb (10.9 kg) for a J6300 Services Router. Observe the following guidelines for lifting and moving a Services Router:

- Before moving the Services Router, read the guidelines in “Preparing for Router Installation” on page 79 to verify that the intended site meets the specified power, environmental, and clearance requirements.
- Before lifting or moving the Services Router, disconnect all external cables.
- As when lifting any heavy object, lift most of the weight with your legs rather than your back. Keep your knees bent and your back relatively straight and avoid twisting your body as you lift. Balance the load evenly and be sure that your footing is solid.

### Installation Instructions Warning



**WARNING:** Read the installation instructions before you connect the router to a power source.

**Waarschuwing** Raadpleeg de installatie-aanwijzingen voordat u het systeem met de voeding verbindt.

**Varoitus** Lue asennusohjeet ennen järjestelmän yhdistämistä virtalähteeseen.

**Attention** Avant de brancher le système sur la source d'alimentation, consulter les directives d'installation.

**Warnung** Lesen Sie die Installationsanweisungen, bevor Sie das System an die Stromquelle anschließen.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Consultare le istruzioni di installazione prima di collegare il sistema all'alimentatore.

**Advarsel** Les installasjonsinstruksjonene før systemet kobles til strømkilden.

**Aviso** Leia as instruções de instalação antes de ligar o sistema à sua fonte de energia.

**¡Atención!** Ver las instrucciones de instalación antes de conectar el sistema a la red de alimentación.

**Varning!** Läs installationsanvisningarna innan du kopplar systemet till dess strömförsörjningsenhet.

---

### Rack-Mounting Requirements and Warnings

Ensure that the equipment rack into which the Services Router is installed is evenly and securely supported, to avoid the hazardous condition that could result from uneven mechanical loading.

---



**WARNING:** To prevent bodily injury when mounting or servicing the router in a rack, take the following precautions to ensure that the system remains stable. The following directives help maintain your safety:

- The router must be installed into a rack that is secured to the building structure.
  - The router should be mounted at the bottom of the rack if it is the only unit in the rack.
  - When mounting the router in a partially filled rack, load the rack from the bottom to the top with the heaviest component at the bottom of the rack.
  - If the rack is provided with stabilizing devices, install the stabilizers before mounting or servicing the router in the rack.
- 



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Om lichamelijk letsel te voorkomen wanneer u dit toestel in een rek monteert of het daar een servicebeurt geeft, moet u speciale voorzorgsmaatregelen nemen om ervoor te zorgen dat het toestel stabiel blijft. De onderstaande richtlijnen worden verstrekt om uw veiligheid te verzekeren:

- De Juniper Networks router moet in een stellage worden geïnstalleerd die aan een bouwswel is verankerd.
- Dit toestel dient onderaan in het rek gemonteerd te worden als het toestel het enige in het rek is.
- Wanneer u dit toestel in een gedeeltelijk gevuld rek monteert, dient u het rek van onderen naar boven te laden met het zwaarste onderdeel onderaan in het rek.
- Als het rek voorzien is van stabiliseringshulpmiddelen, dient u de stabilisatoren te monteren voordat u het toestel in het rek monteert of het daar een servicebeurt geeft.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Kun laite asetetaan telineeseen tai huolletaan sen ollessa telineessä, on noudatettava erityisiä varotoimia järjestelmän vakavuuden säilyttämiseksi, jotta vältytään loukkaantumiselta. Noudata seuraavia turvallisuusohjeita:

- Juniper Networks router on asennettava telineeseen, joka on kiinnitetty rakennukseen.
- Jos telineessä ei ole muita laitteita, aseta laite telineen alaosaan.
- Jos laite asetetaan osaksi täytettyyn telineeseen, aloita kuormittaminen sen alaosasta kaikkein raskaimmalla esineellä ja siirry sitten sen yläosaan.
- Jos telinettä varten on vakaimet, asenna ne ennen laitteen asettamista telineeseen tai sen huoltamista siinä.



**WARNING: Attention** Pour éviter toute blessure corporelle pendant les opérations de montage ou de réparation de cette unité en casier, il convient de prendre des précautions spéciales afin de maintenir la stabilité du système. Les directives ci-dessous sont destinées à assurer la protection du personnel:

- Le rack sur lequel est monté le Juniper Networks router doit être fixé à la structure du bâtiment.
  - Si cette unité constitue la seule unité montée en casier, elle doit être placée dans le bas.
  - Si cette unité est montée dans un casier partiellement rempli, charger le casier de bas en haut en plaçant l'élément le plus lourd dans le bas.
  - Si le casier est équipé de dispositifs stabilisateurs, installer les stabilisateurs avant de monter ou de réparer l'unité en casier.
-





**WARNING: Warnung** Zur Vermeidung von Körperverletzung beim Anbringen oder Warten dieser Einheit in einem Gestell müssen Sie besondere Vorkehrungen treffen, um sicherzustellen, daß das System stabil bleibt. Die folgenden Richtlinien sollen zur Gewährleistung Ihrer Sicherheit dienen:

- Der Juniper Networks router muß in einem Gestell installiert werden, das in der Gebäudestruktur verankert ist.
  - Wenn diese Einheit die einzige im Gestell ist, sollte sie unten im Gestell angebracht werden.
  - Bei Anbringung dieser Einheit in einem zum Teil gefüllten Gestell ist das Gestell von unten nach oben zu laden, wobei das schwerste Bauteil unten im Gestell anzubringen ist.
  - Wird das Gestell mit Stabilisierungszubehör geliefert, sind zuerst die Stabilisatoren zu installieren, bevor Sie die Einheit im Gestell anbringen oder sie warten.
- 



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Per evitare infortuni fisici durante il montaggio o la manutenzione di questa unità in un supporto, occorre osservare speciali precauzioni per garantire che il sistema rimanga stabile. Le seguenti direttive vengono fornite per garantire la sicurezza personale:

- Il Juniper Networks router deve essere installato in un telaio, il quale deve essere fissato alla struttura dell'edificio.
  - Questa unità deve venire montata sul fondo del supporto, se si tratta dell'unica unità da montare nel supporto.
  - Quando questa unità viene montata in un supporto parzialmente pieno, caricare il supporto dal basso all'alto, con il componente più pesante sistemato sul fondo del supporto.
  - Se il supporto è dotato di dispositivi stabilizzanti, installare tali dispositivi prima di montare o di procedere alla manutenzione dell'unità nel supporto.
- 



**WARNING: Advarsel** Unngå fysiske skader under montering eller reparasjonsarbeid på denne enheten når den befinner seg i et kabinett. Vær nøye med at systemet er stabilt. Følgende retningslinjer er gitt for å verne om sikkerheten:

- Juniper Networks router må installeres i et stativ som er forankret til bygningsstrukturen.
  - Denne enheten bør monteres nederst i kabinettet hvis dette er den eneste enheten i kabinettet.
  - Ved montering av denne enheten i et kabinett som er delvis fylt, skal kabinettet lastes fra bunnen og opp med den tyngste komponenten nederst i kabinettet.
  - Hvis kabinettet er utstyrt med stabiliseringsutstyr, skal stabilisatorene installeres før montering eller utføring av reparasjonsarbeid på enheten i kabinettet.
- 



**WARNING: Aviso** Para se prevenir contra danos corporais ao montar ou reparar esta unidade numa estante, deverá tomar precauções especiais para se certificar de que o sistema possui um suporte estável. As seguintes directrizes ajudá-lo-ão a efectuar o seu trabalho com segurança:

- O Juniper Networks router deverá ser instalado numa prateleira fixa à estrutura do edifício.
  - Esta unidade deverá ser montada na parte inferior da estante, caso seja esta a única unidade a ser montada.
  - Ao montar esta unidade numa estante parcialmente ocupada, coloque os itens mais pesados na parte inferior da estante, arrumando-os de baixo para cima.
  - Se a estante possuir um dispositivo de estabilização, instale-o antes de montar ou reparar a unidade.
- 



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Para evitar lesiones durante el montaje de este equipo sobre un bastidor, o posteriormente durante su mantenimiento, se debe poner mucho cuidado en que el sistema quede bien estable. Para garantizar su seguridad, proceda según las siguientes instrucciones:

- El Juniper Networks router debe instalarse en un bastidor fijado a la estructura del edificio.
  - Colocar el equipo en la parte inferior del bastidor, cuando sea la única unidad en el mismo.
  - Cuando este equipo se vaya a instalar en un bastidor parcialmente ocupado, comenzar la instalación desde la parte inferior hacia la superior colocando el equipo más pesado en la parte inferior.
  - Si el bastidor dispone de dispositivos estabilizadores, instalar éstos antes de montar o proceder al mantenimiento del equipo instalado en el bastidor.
-



**WARNING: Varning!** För att undvika kroppsskada när du installerar eller utför underhållsarbete på denna enhet på en ställning måste du vidta särskilda försiktighetsåtgärder för att försäkra dig om att systemet står stadigt. Följande riktlinjer ges för att trygga din säkerhet:

- Juniper Networks router måste installeras i en ställning som är förankrad i byggnadens struktur.
- Om denna enhet är den enda enheten på ställningen skall den installeras längst ned på ställningen.
- Om denna enhet installeras på en delvis fylld ställning skall ställningen fyllas nedifrån och upp, med de tyngsta enheterna längst ned på ställningen.
- Om ställningen är försedd med stabiliseringsdon skall dessa monteras fast innan enheten installeras eller underhålls på ställningen.

---

### Ramp Warning

---



**WARNING:** When installing the router, do not use a ramp inclined at more than 10 degrees.

**Waarschuwing** Gebruik een oprijplaat niet onder een hoek van meer dan 10 graden.

**Varoitus** Älä käyttää sellaista kaltevaa pintaa, jonka kaltevuus ylittää 10 astetta.

**Attention** Ne pas utiliser une rampe dont l'inclinaison est supérieure à 10 degrés.

**Warnung** Keine Rampen mit einer Neigung von mehr als 10 Grad verwenden.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Non usare una rampa con pendenza superiore a 10 gradi.

**Advarsel** Bruk aldri en rampe som heller mer enn 10 grader.

**Aviso** Não utilize uma rampa com uma inclinação superior a 10 graus.

**¡Atención!** No usar una rampa inclinada más de 10 grados

**Varning!** Använd inte ramp med en lutning på mer än 10 grader.

---

### Laser and LED Safety Guidelines and Warnings

Single-mode Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) are equipped with laser transmitters, which are considered a Class 1 Laser Product by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, and are evaluated as a Class 1 Laser Product per EN 60825-1 + A11 + A2 requirements.

Observe the following guidelines and warnings:

- General Laser Safety Guidelines on page 216
- Class 1 Laser Product Warning on page 216
- Class 1 LED Product Warning on page 217
- Laser Beam Warning on page 217
- Radiation from Open Port Apertures Warning on page 218

### General Laser Safety Guidelines

When working around PIMs, observe the following safety guidelines to prevent eye injury:

- Do not look into unterminated ports or at fibers that connect to unknown sources.
- Do not examine unterminated optical ports with optical instruments.
- Avoid direct exposure to the beam.



**WARNING:** Unterminated optical connectors can emit invisible laser radiation. The lens in the human eye focuses all the laser power on the retina, so focusing the eye directly on a laser source—even a low-power laser—could permanently damage the eye.

---

### Class 1 Laser Product Warning



**WARNING:** Class 1 laser product.

**Waarschuwing** Klasse-1 laser produkt.

**Varoitus** Luokan 1 lasertuote.

**Attention** Produit laser de classe I.

**Warnung** Laserprodukt der Klasse 1.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Prodotto laser di Classe 1.

**Advarsel** Laserprodukt av klasse 1.

**Aviso** Produto laser de classe 1.

**¡Atención!** Producto láser Clase I.

**Varning!** Laserprodukt av klass 1.

---

### Class 1 LED Product Warning

---



**WARNING:** Class 1 LED product.

**Waarschuwing** Klasse 1 LED-product.

**Varoitus** Luokan 1 valodiodituote.

**Attention** Alarme de produit LED Class I.

**Warnung** Class 1 LED-Produktwarnung.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Avvertenza prodotto LED di Classe 1.

**Advarsel** LED-produkt i klasse 1.

**Aviso** Produto de classe 1 com LED.

**¡Atención!** Aviso sobre producto LED de Clase 1.

**Varning!** Lysdiodprodukt av klass 1.

---

### Laser Beam Warning

---



**WARNING:** Do not stare into the laser beam or view it directly with optical instruments.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Niet in de straal staren of hem rechtstreeks bekijken met optische instrumenten.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Älä katso säteeseen äläkä tarkastele sitä suoraan optisen laitteen avulla.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Ne pas fixer le faisceau des yeux, ni l'observer directement à l'aide d'instruments optiques.



**WARNING: Warnung** Nicht direkt in den Strahl blicken und ihn nicht direkt mit optischen Geräten prüfen.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Non fissare il raggio con gli occhi né usare strumenti ottici per osservarlo direttamente.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Stirr eller se ikke direkte p strlen med optiske instrumenter.



**WARNING: Aviso** Não olhe fixamente para o raio, nem olhe para ele directamente com instrumentos ópticos.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** No mirar fijamente el haz ni observarlo directamente con instrumentos ópticos.



**WARNING: Varning!** Rikta inte blicken in mot strålen och titta inte direkt på den genom optiska instrument.

### Radiation from Open Port Apertures Warning



**WARNING:** Because invisible radiation may be emitted from the aperture of the port when no fiber cable is connected, avoid exposure to radiation and do not stare into open apertures.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Aangezien onzichtbare straling vanuit de opening van de poort kan komen als er geen fiberkabel aangesloten is, dient blootstelling aan straling en het kijken in open openingen vermeden te worden.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Koska portin aukosta voi emittoitua näkymätöntä säteilyä, kun kuitukaapelia ei ole kytkettynä, vältä säteilylle altistumista äläkä katso avoimiin aukkoihin.



**WARNING: Attention** Des radiations invisibles à l'il nu pouvant traverser l'ouverture du port lorsqu'aucun câble en fibre optique n'y est connecté, il est recommandé de ne pas regarder fixement l'intérieur de ces ouvertures.



**WARNING: Warnung** Aus der Port-Öffnung können unsichtbare Strahlen emittieren, wenn kein Glasfaserkabel angeschlossen ist. Vermeiden Sie es, sich den Strahlungen auszusetzen, und starren Sie nicht in die Öffnungen!



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Quando i cavi in fibra non sono inseriti, radiazioni invisibili possono essere emesse attraverso l'apertura della porta. Evitate di esporvi alle radiazioni e non guardate direttamente nelle aperture.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Unngå utsettelse for stråling, og stirr ikke inn i åpninger som er åpne, fordi usynlig stråling kan emitteres fra portens åpning når det ikke er tilkoblet en fiberkabel.



**WARNING: Aviso** Dada a possibilidade de emissão de radiação invisível através do orifício da via de acesso, quando esta não tiver nenhum cabo de fibra conectado, deverá evitar a exposição à radiação e não deverá olhar fixamente para orifícios que se encontrarem a descoberto.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Debido a que la apertura del puerto puede emitir radiación invisible cuando no existe un cable de fibra conectado, evite mirar directamente a las aperturas para no exponerse a la radiación.



**WARNING: Varning!** Osynlig strålning kan avges från en portöppning utan ansluten fiberkabel och du bör därför undvika att bli utsatt för strålning genom att inte stirra in i oskyddade öppningar.

## Maintenance and Operational Safety Guidelines and Warnings

As you maintain the Services Router, observe the following guidelines and warnings:

- Battery Handling Warning on page 220
- Jewelry Removal Warning on page 221
- Lightning Activity Warning on page 222

- Operating Temperature Warning on page 223
- Product Disposal Warning on page 225

### Battery Handling Warning



**WARNING:** Replacing the battery incorrectly might result in an explosion. Replace the battery only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Er is ontplofingsgevaar als de batterij verkeerd vervangen wordt. Vervang de batterij slechts met hetzelfde of een equivalent type dat door de fabrikant aanbevolen is. Gebruikte batterijen dienen overeenkomstig fabrieksvoorschriften weggeworpen te worden.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Räjähdyksen vaara, jos akku on vaihdettu väärään akkuun. Käytä vaihtamiseen ainoastaan saman- tai vastaavantyyppistä akkua, joka on valmistajan suosittelema. Hävitä käytetyt akut valmistajan ohjeiden mukaan.



**WARNING: Attention** Danger d'explosion si la pile n'est pas remplacée correctement. Ne la remplacer que par une pile de type semblable ou équivalent, recommandée par le fabricant. Jeter les piles usagées conformément aux instructions du fabricant.



**WARNING: Warnung** Bei Einsetzen einer falschen Batterie besteht Explosionsgefahr. Ersetzen Sie die Batterie nur durch den gleichen oder vom Hersteller empfohlenen Batterietyp. Entsorgen Sie die benutzten Batterien nach den Anweisungen des Herstellers.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Det kan være fare for eksplosjon hvis batteriet skiftes på feil måte. Skift kun med samme eller tilsvarende type som er anbefalt av produsenten. Kasser brukte batterier i henhold til produsentens instruksjoner.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Pericolo di esplosione se la batteria non è installata correttamente. Sostituire solo con una di tipo uguale o equivalente, consigliata dal produttore. Eliminare le batterie usate secondo le istruzioni del produttore.





**WARNING: Aviso** Existe perigo de explosão se a bateria for substituída incorrectamente. Substitua a bateria por uma bateria igual ou de um tipo equivalente recomendado pelo fabricante. Destrua as baterias usadas conforme as instruções do fabricante.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Existe peligro de explosión si la batería se reemplaza de manera incorrecta. Reemplazar la batería exclusivamente con el mismo tipo o el equivalente recomendado por el fabricante. Desechar las baterías gastadas según las instrucciones del fabricante.



**WARNING: Varning!** Explosionsfara vid felaktigt batteribyte. Ersätt endast batteriet med samma batterityp som rekommenderas av tillverkaren eller motsvarande. Följ tillverkarens anvisningar vid kassering av använda batterier.

### Jewelry Removal Warning



**WARNING:** Before working on equipment that is connected to power lines, remove jewelry, including rings, necklaces, and watches. Metal objects heat up when connected to power and ground and can cause serious burns or weld the metal object to the terminals.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Alvorens aan apparatuur te werken die met elektrische leidingen is verbonden, sieraden (inclusief ringen, kettingen en horloges) verwijderen. Metalen voorwerpen worden warm wanneer ze met stroom en aarde zijn verbonden, en kunnen ernstige brandwonden veroorzaken of het metalen voorwerp aan de aansluitklemmen lassen.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Ennen kuin työskentelet voimavirtajohtoihin kytkettyjen laitteiden parissa, ota pois kaikki korut (sormukset, kaulakorut ja kellot mukaan lukien). Metalliesineet kuumenevat, kun ne ovat yhteydessä sähkövirran ja maan kanssa, ja ne voivat aiheuttaa vakavia palovammoja tai hitsata metalliesineet kiinni liitäntänapoihin.



**WARNING: Attention** Avant d'accéder à cet équipement connecté aux lignes électriques, ôter tout bijou (anneaux, colliers et montres compris). Lorsqu'ils sont branchés à l'alimentation et reliés à la terre, les objets métalliques chauffent, ce qui peut provoquer des blessures graves ou souder l'objet métallique aux bornes.



**WARNING: Warnung** Vor der Arbeit an Geräten, die an das Netz angeschlossen sind, jeglichen Schmuck (einschließlich Ringe, Ketten und Uhren) abnehmen. Metallgegenstände erhitzen sich, wenn sie an das Netz und die Erde angeschlossen werden, und können schwere Verbrennungen verursachen oder an die Anschlußklemmen angeschweißt werden.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Prima di intervenire su apparecchiature collegate alle linee di alimentazione, togliersi qualsiasi monile (inclusi anelli, collane, braccialetti ed orologi). Gli oggetti metallici si riscaldano quando sono collegati tra punti di alimentazione e massa: possono causare ustioni gravi oppure il metallo può saldarsi ai terminali.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Fjern alle smykker (inkludert ringer, halskeder og klokker) før du skal arbeide på utstyr som er koblet til kraftledninger. Metallgjenstander som er koblet til kraftledninger og jord blir svært varme og kan forårsake alvorlige brannskader eller smelte fast til polene.



**WARNING: Aviso** Antes de trabalhar em equipamento que esteja ligado a linhas de corrente, retire todas as jóias que estiver a usar (incluindo anéis, fios e relógios). Os objectos metálicos aquecerão em contacto com a corrente e em contacto com a ligação à terra, podendo causar queimaduras graves ou ficarem soldados aos terminais.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Antes de operar sobre equipos conectados a líneas de alimentación, quitarse las joyas (incluidos anillos, collares y relojes). Los objetos de metal se calientan cuando se conectan a la alimentación y a tierra, lo que puede ocasionar quemaduras graves o que los objetos metálicos queden soldados a los bornes.



**WARNING: Varning!** Tag av alla smycken (inklusive ringar, halsband och armbandsur) innan du arbetar på utrustning som är kopplad till kraftledningar. Metallobjekt hettas upp när de kopplas ihop med ström och jord och kan förorsaka allvarliga brännskador; metallobjekt kan också sammansvetsas med kontakterna.

### Lightning Activity Warning



**WARNING:** Do not work on the system or connect or disconnect cables during periods of lightning activity.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Tijdens onweer dat gepaard gaat met bliksem, dient u niet aan het systeem te werken of kabels aan te sluiten of te ontkoppelen.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Älä työskentele järjestelmän parissa äläkä yhdistä tai irrota kaapeleita ukkosilmalla.



**WARNING: Attention** Ne pas travailler sur le système ni brancher ou débrancher les câbles pendant un orage.



**WARNING: Warnung** Arbeiten Sie nicht am System und schließen Sie keine Kabel an bzw. trennen Sie keine ab, wenn es gewittert.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Non lavorare sul sistema o collegare oppure scollegare i cavi durante un temporale con fulmini.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Utfør aldri arbeid på systemet, eller koble kabler til eller fra systemet når det tordner eller lyner.



**WARNING: Aviso** Não trabalhe no sistema ou ligue e desligue cabos durante períodos de mau tempo (trovoada).



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** No operar el sistema ni conectar o desconectar cables durante el transcurso de descargas eléctricas en la atmósfera.



**WARNING: Varning!** Vid åska skall du aldrig utföra arbete på systemet eller ansluta eller koppla loss kablar.

### Operating Temperature Warning



**WARNING:** To prevent the router from overheating, do not operate it in an area that exceeds the maximum recommended ambient temperature of 104°F (40°C). To prevent airflow restriction, allow at least 6 inches (15.2 cm) of clearance around the ventilation openings.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Om te voorkomen dat welke router van de Juniper Networks router dan ook oververhit raakt, dient u deze niet te bedienen op een plaats waar de maximale aanbevolen omgevingstemperatuur van 40°C wordt overschreden. Om te voorkomen dat de luchtstroom wordt beperkt, dient er minstens 15,2 cm speling rond de ventilatie-openingen te zijn.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Ettei Juniper Networks router-sarjan reititin ylikuumentuisi, sitä ei saa käyttää tilassa, jonka lämpötila ylittää korkeimman suositellun ympäristölämpötilan 40°C. Ettei ilmanvaihto estyisi, tuuletusaukkojen ympärille on jätettävä ainakin 15,2 cm tilaa.



**WARNING: Attention** Pour éviter toute surchauffe des routeurs de la gamme Juniper Networks router, ne l'utilisez pas dans une zone où la température ambiante est supérieure à 40°C. Pour permettre un flot d'air constant, dégagez un espace d'au moins 15,2 cm autour des ouvertures de ventilations.



**WARNING: Warnung** Um einen Router der router vor Überhitzung zu schützen, darf dieser nicht in einer Gegend betrieben werden, in der die Umgebungstemperatur das empfohlene Maximum von 40°C überschreitet. Um Lüftungsverschluß zu verhindern, achten Sie darauf, daß mindestens 15,2 cm lichter Raum um die Lüftungsöffnungen herum frei bleibt.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Per evitare il surriscaldamento dei router, non adoperateli in un locale che ecceda la temperatura ambientale massima di 40°C. Per evitare che la circolazione dell'aria sia impedita, lasciate uno spazio di almeno 15.2 cm di fronte alle aperture delle ventole.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Unngå overoppheting av eventuelle rutere i Juniper Networks router Disse skal ikke brukes på steder der den anbefalte maksimale omgivelsestemperaturen overstiger 40°C (104°F). Sørg for at klaringen rundt lufteåpningene er minst 15,2 cm (6 tommer) for å forhindre nedsatt luftsirkulasjon.



**WARNING: Aviso** Para evitar o sobreaquecimento do encaminhador Juniper Networks router, não utilize este equipamento numa área que exceda a temperatura máxima recomendada de 40°C. Para evitar a restrição à circulação de ar, deixe pelo menos um espaço de 15,2 cm à volta das aberturas de ventilação.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Para impedir que un encaminador de la serie Juniper Networks router se recaliente, no lo haga funcionar en un área en la que se supere la temperatura ambiente máxima recomendada de 40°C. Para impedir la restricción de la entrada de aire, deje un espacio mínimo de 15,2 cm alrededor de las aperturas para ventilación.



**WARNING: Varning!** Förhindra att en Juniper Networks router överhettas genom att inte använda den i ett område där den maximalt rekommenderade omgivningstemperaturen på 40°C överskrids. Förhindra att luftcirkulationen inskränks genom att se till att det finns fritt utrymme på minst 15,2 cm omkring ventilationsöppningarna.

### Product Disposal Warning



**WARNING:** Disposal of this product must be handled according to all national laws and regulations.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Dit produkt dient volgens alle landelijke wetten en voorschriften te worden afgedankt.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Tämän tuotteen lopullisesta hävittämisestä tulee huolehtia kaikkia valtakunnallisia lakeja ja säännöksiä noudattaen.



**WARNING: Attention** La mise au rebut définitive de ce produit doit être effectuée conformément à toutes les lois et réglementations en vigueur.



**WARNING: Warnung** Dieses Produkt muß den geltenden Gesetzen und Vorschriften entsprechend entsorgt werden.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** L'eliminazione finale di questo prodotto deve essere eseguita osservando le normative italiane vigenti in materia



**WARNING: Advarsel** Endelig disponering av dette produktet må skje i henhold til nasjonale lover og forskrifter.



**WARNING: Aviso** A descartagem final deste produto deverá ser efectuada de acordo com os regulamentos e a legislação nacional.

---



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** El desecho final de este producto debe realizarse según todas las leyes y regulaciones nacionales

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Slutlig kassering av denna produkt bör skötas i enlighet med landets alla lagar och föreskrifter.

---

## Agency Approvals

---

The Services Router complies with the following standards:

- Safety
  - CAN/CSA-22.2 No. 60950-1-03-UL 60950-1 Safety of Information Technology Equipment
  - EN 60950-1 Safety of Information Technology Equipment
  - EN 60825-1 Safety of Laser Products - Part 1: Equipment Classification, Requirements and User's Guide
- EMC
  - AS/NZS 3548 Class B (Australia/New Zealand)
  - EN 55022 Class B Emissions (Europe)
  - FCC Part 15 Class B (USA)
  - VCCI Class B (Japan)
  - FCC Part 68
  - Industry Canada CS-03
- Immunity

- EN 61000-3-2 Power Line Harmonics
- EN 61000-3-3 Voltage Fluctuations and Flicker
- EN 61000-4-2 ESD
- EN 61000-4-3 Radiated Immunity
- EN 61000-4-4 EFT
- EN 61000-4-5 Surge
- EN 61000-4-6 Low Frequency Common Immunity
- EN 61000-4-11 Voltage Dips and Sags
- ETSI
  - ETSI EN-300386-2 Telecommunication Network Equipment. Electromagnetic Compatibility Requirements

## Compliance Statements for Environmental Requirements

---

### ***Lithium Battery***

Batteries in this product are not based on mercury, lead, or cadmium substances. The batteries used in this product are in compliance with EU Directives 91/157/EEC, 93/86/EEC, and 98/101/EEC. The product documentation includes instructional information on the proper method of reclamation and recycling.

## Compliance Statements for EMC Requirements

---

- Canada on page 227
- European Community on page 229
- Japan on page 231
- Taiwan on page 232
- United States on page 232

### ***Canada***

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

The Industry Canada label identifies certified equipment. This certification means that the equipment meets certain telecommunications network protective, operational, and safety requirements. Industry Canada does not guarantee the equipment will operate to the users' satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. In some cases, the inside wiring associated with a single line individual service may be extended by means of a certified connector assembly. The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations.

Repairs to certified equipment should be made by an authorized Canadian maintenance facility designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.




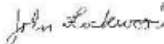
**CAUTION:** Users should not attempt to make electrical ground connections by themselves, but should contact the appropriate inspection authority or an electrician, as appropriate.


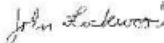
---


Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines, and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.



**European Community**

		DOC 0014
<h2>Declaration of Conformity</h2>		
<p>Juniper Networks, Inc. 1194 N. Mathilda Ave Sunnyvale, CA. 94089 USA</p>		
<p>declares that under our sole responsibility the product(s)</p>		
<p><b>J2300 Services Router</b></p>		
<p>are in conformity with the provisions of the following EC Directives, including all amendments, and with national legislation implementing these directives:</p>		
<p><b>Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC</b> <b>EMC Directive 89/336/EEC</b></p>		
<p>and that the following harmonized standards have been applied</p>		
<p><b>EN 60950:1992+A1+A2+A3+A4+A11</b></p>		
<p><b>EN 300 386 V1.3.1:2001</b> <b>EN 55024:1998</b> EN 55022:1998, Class B EN 61000-4-2, EN 61000-4-3, EN 61000-4-4, EN 61000-4-5, EN 61000-4-6</p>		
<p>Place Sunnyvale, CA</p>	 <p>Signature John Lockwood</p>	<p>Date 08/09/2005</p>

	DOC 0015	
<h2>Declaration of Conformity</h2>		
<p>Juniper Networks, Inc. 1194 N. Mathilda Ave Sunnyvale, CA. 94089 USA</p>		
<p>declares that under our sole responsibility the product(s)</p>		
<p><b>J4300 Services Router</b></p>		
<p>are in conformity with the provisions of the following EC Directives, including all amendments, and with national legislation implementing these directives:</p>		
<p><b>Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC</b> <b>EMC Directive 89/336/EEC</b></p>		
<p>and that the following harmonized standards have been applied</p>		
<p><b>EN 60950:1992+A1+A2+A3+A4+A11</b></p>		
<p><b>EN 300 386 V1.3.1:2001</b> <b>EN 55024:1998</b> <b>EN 55022:1998, Class B</b> <b>EN 61000-4-2, EN 61000-4-3, EN 61000-4-4, EN 61000-4-5,</b> <b>EN 61000-4-6</b></p>		
<p>Place Sunnyvale, CA</p>	<p> Signature John Lockwood</p>	<p>Date 08/09/2005</p>


DOC 0016

## Declaration of Conformity

Juniper Networks, Inc.  
 1194 N. Mathilda Ave  
 Sunnyvale, CA. 94089 USA

declares that under our sole responsibility the product(s)

**J6300 Services Router**

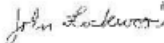
are in conformity with the provisions of the following EC Directives, including all amendments,  
and with national legislation implementing these directives:

**Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC**  
**EMC Directive 89/336/EEC**

and that the following harmonized standards have been applied

**EN 60950:1992+A1+A2+A3+A4+A11**  
**EN 300 386 V1.3.1:2001**  
**EN 55024:1998**  
 EN 55022:1998, Class B  
 EN 61000-4-2, EN 61000-4-3, EN 61000-4-4, EN 61000-4-5,  
 EN 61000-4-6

Place  
Sunnyvale, CA

  
 Signature  
John Lockwood

Date  
08/09/2005

### Japan

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づくクラスB 情報技術装置です。この装置は、家庭環境で使用することを目的としていますが、この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。

取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをして下さい。

The preceding translates as follows:

This is a Class B product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council for Interference by Information Technology Equipment (VCCI). If this product is used near a radio or television receiver in a domestic environment, it may cause radio interference. Install and use the equipment according to the instruction manual.

**Taiwan****警告使用者**

這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

**United States**

The Services Router has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

**FCC Part 15 Statement**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try and correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or TV technician for help.

**FCC Part 68 Statement**

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules. On the product is a label that contains the FCC registration number for this device. If requested, this information must be provided to the telephone company.

This equipment is designed to be connected to the telephone network or premises wiring using a compatible modular jack which is Part 68 compliant. See installation instructions for details.

If this device causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. The telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved. The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If trouble is experienced with this equipment or for repair or warranty information, please follow the applicable procedures explained in the “Technical Support” section of this manual.

- FCC Registration Number—See label on product.
- Required Connector (USOC)—RJ-48C
- Service Order Code (SOC)—6.ON



## **Part 5**

# **Index**

- Index on page 237





# Index

## Symbols

#, comments in configuration statements.....	xvii
#, configuration mode command prompt.....	70
( ), in syntax descriptions.....	xvii
* (red asterisk).....	67
10/100Base-TX ports <i>See</i> Fast Ethernet ports	
4-Port ISDN BRI S/T PIM	
description.....	55
PIM ONLINE LED.....	56
4-Port ISDN BRI U PIM	
description.....	55
PIM ONLINE LED.....	56
< >, in syntax descriptions.....	xvii
>, operational mode command prompt.....	69
? command	
for CLI online help.....	73
in configuration mode.....	70
in operational mode.....	69
? icon (J-Web).....	67
[ ], in configuration statements.....	xvii
{ }, in configuration statements.....	xvii
(pipe), in syntax descriptions.....	xvii

## A

AC plug types.....	86
AC power	
connecting power.....	96
cords <i>See</i> AC power cords	
dedicated AC power feed requirement.....	160
electrical specifications.....	84
grounding the router.....	97
installing a J6300 power supply.....	160
J2300 chassis.....	12
J2300 system.....	19
J4300 chassis.....	22
J4300 system.....	29
J6300 chassis.....	22
J6300 system.....	29
removing a J6300 power supply.....	159
requirements.....	84
safety guidelines.....	197

AC power cords	
electrical specifications.....	85
physical requirements.....	85
plug types.....	86
replacing.....	158
accident, steps to take.....	205
ACTIVITY LED.....	19, 40
ACTIVITY LED (Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM).....	55
ad0 <i>See</i> compact flash	
adapter, console port	
chassis.....	111, 114
addresses	
fe-0/0/0 for autoinstallation.....	107
loopback.....	106
management interface.....	107
ADSL PIM	
description.....	56
PIM ONLINE LED.....	57
ADSL ports	
description.....	56
LED states.....	57
RJ-11 connector pinouts.....	189
agency approvals.....	226
airflow	
J2300.....	20
J4300 and J6300.....	30
space requirement.....	79
ALARM LED.....	16
indications.....	165
alarms	
ALARM LED.....	16
conditions, in chassis components.....	166
alternative boot media <i>See</i> boot devices; USB	
altitude requirement.....	81
Annex A; Annex B <i>See</i> ADSL; SHDSL	
antistatic mat.....	195
approvals, agency.....	226
asymmetric digital subscriber line <i>See</i> ADSL	
AT modem command.....	114, 115
AT&D1 modem command.....	114
AT&K0 modem command.....	114
AT&W modem command.....	114
ATDT modem command.....	115
ATSO = 1 modem command.....	114

**B**

backup compact flash, removing.....	151
backup router.....	106
defining (configuration editor).....	120
basic connectivity.....	
CLI configuration editor.....	118
establishing.....	103
J-Web configuration editor.....	118
Quick Configuration.....	115
requirements.....	108
sample configuration.....	121
secure Web access.....	123
verifying.....	121
battery.....	
environmental compliance.....	227
handling.....	220
lithium.....	227
BGP route reflectors license.....	132
blank panel.....	
for PIM slots.....	47
for power supply (J6300).....	158
blinking.....	
blue LED state.....	15
configuration LED state.....	17
Fast Ethernet port ACTIVITY LED state (dual-port PIM).....	55
ISDN BRI ONLINE LED state.....	56
LAN port ACTIVITY LED state.....	19, 40
POWER LED state.....	16
blue Juniper Networks logo LED.....	15
boot devices.....	25
J2300.....	14
J4300.....	25
J6300.....	25
removable compact flash.....	28
<i>See also</i> compact flash.....	
boot process, backup router for.....	106
boot sequence.....	
J2300.....	14
J4300.....	25
J6300.....	25
Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) route reflectors.....	
license.....	132
bottom pane.....	65
braces, in configuration statements.....	xvii
brackets.....	
angle, in syntax descriptions.....	xvii
square, in configuration statements.....	xvii
browser interface <i>See</i> J-Web interface.....	
BTUs per hour.....	82
built-in Ethernet ports <i>See</i> Fast Ethernet ports.....	
buttons.....	
CONFIG.....	17
power.....	16

**C**

cables.....	
AC power <i>See</i> AC power cords.....	
ADSL RJ-11 pinouts.....	189
arranging for safety.....	146
chassis console port, DB-9 connector.....	
pinouts.....	186
chassis console port, RJ-45 connector.....	
pinouts.....	185
connecting to network media.....	95
console port cable (chassis),.....	
connecting.....	111, 114
console port cable (chassis), replacing.....	144
DC cables <i>See</i> DC power cables.....	
disconnecting PIM cables.....	147
E1 RJ-48 pinouts.....	186
Ethernet cable, connecting.....	109, 111, 114
Fast Ethernet RJ-45 connector pinout.....	185
grounding.....	96
ISDN RJ-45 pinouts.....	190
PIM, installing.....	148
PIM, removing.....	147
reducing radio frequency interference (RFI).....	84
serial EIA-530A DCE pinouts.....	181
serial EIA-530A DTE pinouts.....	180
serial PIM specifications.....	175
serial RS-232 DCE pinouts.....	177
serial RS-232 DTE pinouts.....	176
serial RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE pinouts.....	178
serial RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE pinouts.....	177
serial V.35 DCE pinouts.....	183
serial V.35 DTE pinouts.....	182
serial X.21 DCE pinouts.....	184
serial X.21 DTE pinouts.....	183
SHDSL RJ-11 pinouts.....	189
T1 RJ-48 pinouts.....	186
Canada, compliance statement.....	227
case number, for JTAC.....	170
certificates <i>See</i> SSL certificates.....	
channelized E1 PIM.....	51
channelized E1 ports.....	
description.....	51
LED states.....	52
RJ-48 cable pinouts.....	186
channelized T1 PIM.....	51
channelized T1 ports.....	
description.....	51
LED states.....	52
RJ-48 cable pinouts.....	186
chassis.....	
alarm conditions and remedies.....	166
component serial number labels.....	167
dimensions, J2300.....	13
dimensions, J4300.....	24
dimensions, J6300.....	24
environmental tolerances.....	81

- grounding.....96
- J2300.....11
- J2300 Dual-Port E1.....41
- J2300 Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI.....43
- J2300 Dual-Port G.SHDSL.....44
- J2300 Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T.....45
- J2300 Dual-Port Serial.....39
- J2300 Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI.....40
- J2300 Dual-Port T1.....41
- J2300 Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI.....43
- J2300 types supported.....38
- J4300.....20
- J6300.....20
- lifting guidelines.....210
- rack requirements.....80
- weight, J2300.....13
- weight, J4300.....24
- weight, J6300.....24
- chassis software process.....32
- chassisd process.....32
- checklist, for site preparation.....88
- clear operation, CONFIG button on the front
  - panel.....17
- clear-text access.....108
- clearance.....79
- clearing and resetting to factory configuration, with
  - the CONFIG button.....17
- CLI *See* JUNOS CLI
- CLI configuration editor
  - basic settings.....118
  - capabilities.....62
  - initial configuration.....118
  - secure access configuration.....128
  - statement types.....71
- CLI terminal *See* JUNOS CLI
- command completion
  - description.....73
  - setting on and off.....75
- command hierarchy.....68
- command prompts
  - changing.....75
  - configuration mode (#).....70
  - operational mode (>).....69
- command-line interface *See* CLI configuration editor; JUNOS CLI
- comments, in configuration statements.....xvii
- committed configuration
  - J-Web configuration editor display.....67
  - root password requirement.....105
- Common Criteria environments
  - management access affected.....108
  - NTP requirement.....105
  - password limitations.....105
- compact flash
  - backup, removing.....151
  - description.....14, 25
  - minor (yellow) alarm.....166
  - primary, description.....28
  - primary, installing.....149
  - primary, removing.....149
  - removable, description.....28
  - removable, installing.....152
  - removable, J4300 and J6300.....28
  - removable, LED states.....28
  - removable, removing.....151
- compliance
  - EMC requirements.....227
  - general standards.....226
  - lithium battery.....220
- components
  - packing for shipment.....172
  - replacing.....143
  - serial number label.....167
  - troubleshooting.....165
  - See also* LEDs
- CONFIG button
  - for clearing all configurations and resetting to
    - factory configuration.....17
  - for rescue configuration.....17
- configuration
  - clearing, with the CONFIG button.....17
  - factory, resetting with the CONFIG button.....17
  - root password requirement.....105
- configuration editor *See* CLI configuration editor; J-Web configuration editor
- configuration hierarchy, J-Web display.....67
- configuration LED states.....17
- configuration mode.....71
  - commands.....70
  - prompt (#).....70
  - See also* CLI configuration editor
- connection
  - AC power.....96
  - DC power.....98
  - for management.....103
  - network cables.....95
  - to Services Router.....109
- connectivity
  - basic *See* basic connectivity
  - hardware.....89
  - modem (remote) connection.....113
  - regaining lost DHCP lease after initial
    - configuration.....116
  - through J-Web.....109
  - through the CLI locally.....111
  - through the CLI remotely.....113
- console port
  - adapter (chassis).....111, 114
  - connecting through the CLI locally.....111
  - connecting through the CLI remotely.....113
  - description.....17, 27
  - on chassis, DB-9 connector pinouts.....186

on chassis, RJ-45 connector pinouts.....	185
replacing the cable.....	144
settings for local CLI connection.....	112
settings for modem connection at router for remote CLI access.....	114
settings for modem connection for remote CLI access.....	115
container statements.....	71
conventions	
notice icons.....	xvi
text and syntax.....	xvi
cooling system	
airflow requirement.....	79
J2300.....	19
J4300.....	30
J6300.....	30
cords <i>See</i> AC power cords; cables; DC power cables	
curly braces, in configuration statements.....	xvii
customer support.....	xx
contacting JTAC.....	xx
contacting JTAC for hardware return.....	169
information required for hardware return.....	170

## D

da0 <i>See</i> USB	
daemons <i>See</i> processes, software	
data link switching (DLSw) license.....	132
datasheets URL.....	35
DB-9 connector pinouts	
chassis console port.....	186
DB-9 to DB-25 serial port adapter.....	114
DC power	
cables <i>See</i> DC power cables	
connecting power.....	98
dedicated DC power feed requirement.....	164
electrical specifications.....	84
grounding requirements and warning.....	201
grounding the router.....	98
installing a J6300 power supply.....	163
J2300 chassis.....	13
J2300 system.....	19
J4300 chassis.....	22
J4300 system.....	29
J6300 chassis.....	23
J6300 system.....	29
power disconnection warning.....	199
removing a J6300 power supply.....	162
requirements.....	84
safety guidelines (general).....	198
safety guidelines, power sources for redundant power supplies.....	199
wiring sequence warning.....	201
wiring terminations warning.....	203

DC power cables	
electrical specifications.....	86
physical requirements.....	86
replacing.....	161
usage warning.....	198
Declarations of Conformity.....	229
default gateway.....	106
defining (Quick Configuration).....	117
deleting	
all configurations, with the CONFIG button.....	17
licenses (CLI).....	136
licenses (J-Web).....	135
desk installation (J2300 only).....	91
clearance requirement.....	80
DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol).....	107
DHCP server	
after initial configuration.....	107
before initial configuration.....	107
regaining lost lease after initial configuration.....	116
diagnosis	
chassis.....	166
hardware.....	166
dial-up modem connection <i>See</i> modem connection to router console port	
digital certificate <i>See</i> SSL certificates	
digital subscriber line <i>See</i> ADSL; SHDSL	
dimensions	
J2300.....	13
J4300.....	24
J6300.....	24
DIMMs (dual inline memory modules) <i>See</i> DRAM modules	
DLSw license.....	132
DNS (Domain Name System).....	106
DNS server	
defining (configuration editor).....	120
defining (Quick Configuration).....	117
function.....	106
documentation set	
comments on.....	xx
domain name.....	104
defining (configuration editor).....	119
defining (Quick Configuration).....	116
<i>See also</i> DNS server	
Domain Name System.....	106
domain search	
defining (configuration editor).....	120
defining (Quick Configuration).....	117
downloading	
licenses (J-Web).....	135
DRAM modules	
installing.....	157
location.....	154
removing.....	155
dry chemical fire extinguishers, prohibited.....	83

DS1 ports *See* E1 ports; T1 ports  
 DS3 ports *See* E3 ports; T3 ports  
 DSL *See* ADSL; SHDSL  
 dual inline memory modules *See* DRAM modules  
 Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1 PIM.....51  
 Dual-Port E1 chassis (J2300).....41  
 Dual-Port E1 PIM.....49  
 Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI chassis (J2300).....43  
 Dual-Port E3 PIM .....53  
 Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM.....54  
 Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis (J2300).....44  
 Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis  
   (J2300).....45  
 Dual-Port Serial chassis (J2300).....39  
 Dual-Port Serial PIM.....48  
 Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI chassis (J2300).....40  
 Dual-Port T1 chassis (J2300).....41  
 Dual-Port T1 PIM.....49  
 Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI chassis (J2300).....43  
 Dual-Port T3 PIM .....53

## E

E1 ports  
   description.....49  
     *See also* channelized E1 ports  
     J2300.....41  
     J2300 (with ISDN BRI S/T port).....43  
     LED states.....42, 44, 50  
     RJ-48 cable pinouts.....186  
 E3 ports  
   BNC connector pinouts.....189  
   description.....53  
   LED states.....54  
 earth ground *See* grounding  
 earthquakes  
   rack-mount requirements.....81  
   seismic requirements.....81  
 EIA-530A DCE cable pinouts.....181  
 EIA-530A DTE cable pinouts.....180  
 electrical specifications.....84  
 electricity  
   safety warnings.....196  
   wiring guidelines.....83  
 electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) *See* EMC  
 electromagnetic interference (EMI) *See* EMI  
 electrostatic bag, for storing components.....195  
 electrostatic discharge, preventing.....195  
 EMC (electromagnetic compatibility)  
   compliance with requirements.....227  
   preventing problems with.....84  
   standards.....226  
 EMI (electromagnetic interference)  
   compliance with requirements.....227  
   standards.....226  
   suppressing.....84

encrypted access  
   through HTTPS.....123  
   through SSH.....108  
   through SSL.....123  
 environment, CLI  
   displaying.....74  
   setting.....75  
 environmental requirements for operation.....81  
 EPROM.....14, 25  
 ESD (electrostatic discharge), preventing.....195  
 ESD wrist strap  
   verifying resistance, for safety.....195  
   wearing during installation.....12, 21  
 Ethernet cable  
   chassis console DB-9 connector pinouts.....186  
   chassis console, RJ-45 connector pinouts.....185  
   connecting the Services Router to a management  
     device.....109, 111  
   connecting the Services Router to a modem.....114  
   replacing.....144  
 Ethernet ports *See* Fast Ethernet ports *See* Fast Ethernet  
   ports  
 European Union, compliance statements.....229

## F

factory configuration, committing with the CONFIG  
   button.....17  
 failures, troubleshooting  
   PIM.....166  
   Routing Engine fan.....166  
 fans  
   failure, troubleshooting.....166  
   J2300.....19  
   J4300.....30  
   J6300.....30  
 Fast Ethernet cable  
   RJ-45 connector pinout.....185  
 Fast Ethernet ports  
   ACTIVITY status (dual-port PIM).....55  
   Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM.....54  
   J2300.....18  
   J4300 and J6300.....28  
   LED states.....19, 40  
   LED states (dual-port PIM).....55  
   LINK/ SPEED status.....19, 40  
   LINK/ SPEED status (dual-port PIM).....55  
   port 0.....107  
   RJ-45 connector pinout.....185  
 FCC Part 15 compliance statement.....232  
 FCC Part 68 compliance statement.....233  
 fe-0/0/0 .....18, 28  
   connecting through J-Web.....109  
   defining address (configuration editor).....121  
   defining address (Quick Configuration).....117

for autoinstallation.....	107
management interface.....	107
<i>See also</i> Fast Ethernet ports	
fe-0/0/1 <i>See</i> Fast Ethernet ports	
feature licenses <i>See</i> licenses	
feature overview.....	5
field-replaceable units, replacing.....	143
fire extinguishers	
prohibited.....	83
required.....	83
fire safety requirements.....	82
fire suppression	
equipment required.....	83
shutdown requirement.....	82
font conventions.....	xvi
forwarding software process.....	32
FPC, PIM slot number in command	
displays.....	147, 148, 167
front panel	
Dual-Port E1 chassis.....	42
Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI chassis.....	43
Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis.....	44
Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis.....	45
Dual-Port Serial chassis.....	39
Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI S/T chassis.....	40
Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI U chassis.....	40
Dual-Port T1 chassis.....	42
Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI chassis.....	43
J2300.....	15
J4300.....	26
J6300.....	26
FRUs (field-replaceable units), replacing.....	143
fwdd process.....	32

## G

G.SHDSL PIM	
description.....	58
PIM ONLINE LED.....	59
G.SHDSL ports <i>See</i> SHDSL ports	
gateway, default.....	106
glossary	
basic connectivity.....	103
PIMs.....	35
secure Web access.....	123
graceful shutdown.....	16, 102
graphical user interface <i>See</i> J-Web interface	
grounding	
cable.....	96
chassis.....	96
DC power requirements and warning.....	201
equipment warning.....	204
grounding lug	
connecting.....	97, 99
specifications.....	96
group licenses.....	134

GUI *See* J-Web interface

## H

hardware	
alarm conditions and remedies.....	166
installation and connection.....	89
maintenance.....	143
PIM overview.....	35
product overview.....	3
replacing components.....	143
returning.....	167
troubleshooting components.....	165
<i>See also</i> LEDs	
hardware features.....	11
J2300 components.....	13
J2300 front panel.....	15
J4300 components.....	24
J4300 front panel.....	26
J6300 components.....	24
J6300 front panel.....	26
PIMs.....	35
product overview.....	3
Hayes-compatible modem <i>See</i> modem connection to	
router console port	
help	
CLI command.....	74
J-Web interface.....	66
JUNOS CLI.....	73
help apropos command.....	74
help icon (?).....	67
help reference command.....	74
help topic command.....	74
hostname.....	104
defining (configuration editor).....	119
defining (Quick Configuration).....	116
overview.....	104
<i>See also</i> DNS server	
HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol)	
enabling Web access (configuration editor).....	128
enabling Web access (Quick Configuration).....	125
on built-in management interfaces.....	124
verifying configuration.....	129
HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol over SSL)	
enabling secure access (configuration	
editor).....	128
enabling secure access (Quick	
Configuration).....	125
Quick Configuration.....	125
recommended for secure access.....	124
verifying secure access configuration.....	129
humidity requirement.....	81

Hyperterminal, for terminal emulation  
     local CLI connection.....112  
     modem connection at router for remote CLI  
         access.....114  
     modem connection for remote CLI access.....115  
 Hypertext Transfer Protocol *See* HTTP  
 Hypertext Transfer Protocol over SSL *See* HTTPS

## I

IBM networking *See* DLSw  
 idle time, setting for a CLI session.....75  
 ifd process.....32  
 immunity standards.....226  
 IN USE LED states.....28  
 initial configuration requirements.....108  
 injury, steps to take.....205  
 installation  
     AC power supplies (J6300).....160  
     console port cable (chassis).....144  
     DC power supplies (J6300).....163  
     desk (J2300 only).....91  
     DRAM modules.....157  
     initial.....89  
     licenses (CLI).....135  
     licenses (J-Web).....134  
     PIM cables.....148  
     PIMs.....146  
     preparation.....79  
     primary compact flash.....149  
     rack *See* rack installation  
     removable compact flash.....152  
     requirements.....89  
     restricted access, J4300 and J6300.....30, 94  
     safety guidelines and warnings.....210  
     site checklist.....88  
     site guidelines.....79  
     tools and equipment.....90  
     USB storage device.....154  
     wall (J2300 only).....92  
 Integrated Services Digital Network *See* ISDN  
 interface software process.....32  
 interfaces  
     J2300 overview.....4  
     J2300 types supported.....38  
     J4300 overview.....4  
     J4300 types supported.....47  
     J6300 overview.....5  
     J6300 types supported.....47  
 Internet Explorer, modifying for worldwide version of  
     JUNOS software.....64  
 ISDN BRI ports  
     BRI S/T.....55  
     BRI U.....55  
     J2300, BRI S/T (with E1 ports).....43  
     J2300, BRI S/T (with serial ports).....40

    J2300, BRI S/T (with SHDSL ports).....45  
     J2300, BRI U (with serial ports).....40  
     J2300, BRI U (with T1 ports).....43  
     LED states.....41, 44, 46, 56  
     provisioning.....87  
     RJ-45 connector pinouts.....190  
 ISDN provisioning.....87  
     *See also* ISDN BRI ports

## J

J-Flow license.....132  
 J-series  
     establishing secure Web access.....123  
     establishing software connectivity.....103  
     feature summary.....5  
     hardware.....11  
     hardware replacement.....143  
     hardware return.....167  
     HTTPS Web access.....123  
     installation and connection.....89  
     JUNOS Internet software overview.....31  
     licenses.....131  
     models available.....3  
     network cables and connectors.....175  
     PIMs.....35  
     release notes, URL.....xv  
     safety and compliance.....191  
     site preparation.....79  
     SSL access.....123  
     user interfaces *See* user interfaces  
 J-Web configuration editor  
     basic settings.....118  
     configuration hierarchy display.....67  
     initial configuration.....118  
     interface comparison.....62  
     secure access.....128  
 J-Web interface  
     configuration editor *See* J-Web configuration editor  
     connecting.....109  
     context-sensitive help.....66, 73  
     help (?) icon.....67  
     Internet Explorer, modifying for worldwide version  
         of JUNOS software.....64  
     managing licenses.....133  
     overview.....61  
     page layout.....65  
     Quick Configuration *See* Quick Configuration  
     regaining lost DHCP lease after initial  
         configuration.....116  
     sessions.....67  
     starting.....64  
     windows, multiple, unpredictable results  
         with.....67  
 J-Web Quick Configuration *See* Quick Configuration

J2300	
boot devices.....	14
boot sequence.....	14
chassis.....	11
chassis types supported.....	38
cooling system.....	19
Dual-Port E1 chassis.....	41
Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI chassis.....	43
Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis.....	44
Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis.....	45
Dual-Port Serial chassis.....	39
Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI chassis.....	40
Dual-Port T1 chassis.....	41
Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI chassis.....	43
electrical specifications.....	84
fans.....	19
front panel.....	15
hardware.....	11
hardware components.....	13
installation.....	91
interfaces supported.....	38
physical specifications.....	13
PIM overview.....	38
PIMs supported.....	38
ports supported.....	38
power system.....	19
Routing Engine.....	14
trained personnel access installation.....	83, 91, 96
USB port.....	18
J4300	
4-Port ISDN BRI S/T PIM.....	55
4-Port ISDN BRI U PIM.....	55
ADSL PIM.....	56
boot devices.....	25
boot sequence.....	25
chassis.....	20
cooling system.....	30
Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1 PIM.....	51
Dual-Port E1 PIM.....	49
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM.....	54
Dual-Port Serial PIM.....	48
Dual-Port T1 PIM.....	49
E3 PIM.....	53
fans.....	30
front panel.....	26
FRUs, replacing.....	143
G.SHDSL PIM.....	58
hardware.....	20
hardware components.....	24
hardware, replacing.....	143
installation.....	94
interfaces supported.....	47
physical specifications.....	24
PIM overview.....	47
PIMs supported.....	47
ports supported.....	47
power supplies <i>See</i> power supplies, J6300	
removable compact flash.....	28
restricted access installation.....	30, 94
Routing Engine.....	25
T3 PIM.....	53
USB port.....	27
Japan, compliance statement.....	231
JTAC (Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center)	
contacting.....	166
contacting for hardware return.....	169
information required for hardware return.....	170
Juniper Networks logo LED.....	15
Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center <i>See</i> JTAC	
JUNOS CLI	
CLI terminal.....	69
command completion.....	73
command hierarchy.....	68
command modes.....	62
command prompts <i>See</i> command prompts	
connecting locally.....	111
connecting remotely.....	113
console.....	69
context-sensitive help.....	73
editing keystrokes.....	72
environment, changing.....	74
removable compact flash.....	28
restricted access installation.....	30, 94
Routing Engine.....	25
USB port.....	27
J6300	
4-Port ISDN BRI S/T PIM.....	55
4-Port ISDN BRI U PIM.....	55
ADSL PIM.....	56
boot devices.....	25
boot sequence.....	25
chassis.....	20
cooling system.....	30
Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1 PIM.....	51
Dual-Port E1 PIM.....	49
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM.....	54
Dual-Port Serial PIM.....	48
Dual-Port T1 PIM.....	49
E3 PIM.....	53
fans.....	30
front panel.....	26
FRUs, replacing.....	143
G.SHDSL PIM.....	58
hardware.....	20
hardware components.....	24
hardware, replacing.....	143
installation.....	94
interfaces supported.....	47
physical specifications.....	24
PIM overview.....	47
PIMs supported.....	47
ports supported.....	47
power supplies <i>See</i> power supplies, J6300	
removable compact flash.....	28
restricted access installation.....	30, 94
Routing Engine.....	25
T3 PIM.....	53
USB port.....	27



- idle time.....75
  - managing licenses.....135
  - overview.....62
  - screen length.....76
  - screen width.....76
  - ssh.....69
  - starting.....69
  - telnet.....69
  - terminal type.....76
  - working directory.....75
  - JUNOS Internet software
    - establishing connectivity.....103
    - establishing secure Web access.....123
    - Internet Explorer, modifying for worldwide
      - version.....64
    - licenses.....131
    - overview.....31
    - Packet Forwarding Engine.....31
    - processes.....32
    - release notes, URL.....xv
    - Routing Engine.....31
    - worldwide version, modifying Internet Explorer
      - for.....64
  - JUNOScope application.....33
  - JUNOScript API
    - defining access (Quick Configuration).....117
    - enabling secure access.....125
    - management access.....108
    - verifying secure access configuration.....129
  - JUNOScript over SSL.....125
- K**
- kernel.....31
  - key sequences, editing, in CLI.....72
- L**
- labels, serial number.....167
  - LAN ports *See* Fast Ethernet ports
  - laptop *See* management device
  - lasers
    - beam warning.....217
    - Class 1 product warning.....216
    - open aperture warning.....218
    - safety guidelines.....216
  - leaf statements.....71
  - LEDs
    - ACTIVITY status.....19, 40
    - ACTIVITY status (dual-port PIM).....55
    - ADSL PIM status.....57
    - ADSL port status.....57
    - ALARM.....16
    - blue, for router status.....15
    - channelized E1 ports.....52
    - channelized T1 ports.....52
    - Class 1 product warning.....217
    - configuration.....17
    - E1 port status.....42, 44, 50
    - E3 port status.....54
    - Fast Ethernet port status.....19, 40
    - Fast Ethernet port status (dual-port PIM).....55
    - G.SHDSL PIM status.....59
    - IN USE, for removable compact flash.....28
    - ISDN PIM status.....41, 44, 46, 56
    - ISDN port status.....56
    - J6300 power supply.....29
    - Juniper Networks logo.....15
    - LAN port status.....19, 40
    - LINK/ SPEED status.....19, 40
    - LINK/ SPEED status (Dual-Port Fast Ethernet
      - PIM).....55
    - ONLINE status (ADSL PIM).....57
    - ONLINE status (G.SHDSL PIM).....59
    - ONLINE status (ISDN BRI PIMs).....56
    - POWER .....16
    - safety warnings.....215
    - serial port status.....40, 41, 49
    - SHDSL port status.....45, 46, 59
    - T1 port status.....42, 44, 50
    - T3 port status.....54
  - license infringement
    - identifying any licenses needed.....134
    - verifying license usage.....138
    - verifying licenses installed.....137
  - license keys
    - components.....132
    - displaying (CLI).....138
    - displaying (J-Web).....135
    - status.....134
    - version.....134
  - licenses
    - adding (CLI).....135
    - adding (J-Web).....134
    - BGP route reflectors.....132
    - deleting (CLI).....136
    - deleting (J-Web).....135
    - displaying (CLI).....137
    - displaying (J-Web).....133
    - displaying usage.....138
    - DLSw.....132
    - downloading (J-Web).....135
    - features requiring a license.....5
    - group.....134
    - infringement, preventing.....133
      - See also* license infringement
    - installed.....134
    - J-Flow traffic analysis.....132
    - JUNOS Internet software.....131
    - key.....132
      - See also* license keys
    - managing (CLI).....135

managing (J-Web).....	133
overview.....	131
preparation for.....	132
saving (CLI).....	136
traffic analysis.....	132
verifying.....	137
Licenses page.....	133
lifting guidelines.....	210
lightening activity warning.....	222
lights <i>See</i> LEDs	
limitations	
ALARM LED lights yellow whether alarm is minor or major.....	16, 165
LINK/ SPEED LED.....	19, 40
LINK/ SPEED LED (Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM).....	55
lithium battery compliance.....	227
lo0.0.....	106
local connection to the router console port.....	111
loopback address	
defining (configuration editor).....	120
defining (Quick Configuration).....	117
overview.....	106
lug <i>See</i> grounding lug	
<b>M</b>	
maintenance	
AC power cord, replacing.....	158
console port cable (chassis).....	144
DC power cable, replacing.....	161
DRAM modules.....	154
PIM cables.....	147
PIMs.....	144
power system.....	158
primary compact flash.....	148
removable compact flash.....	150
tools and parts required.....	143
USB storage device.....	153
warnings.....	219
major (red) alarms	
PIMs.....	166
Routing Engine.....	166
management access.....	107
management device	
connecting through the CLI.....	112
connecting to J-Web.....	109, 110
management interface address	
after initial configuration.....	107
before initial configuration.....	107
defining (configuration editor).....	121
defining (Quick Configuration).....	117
during initial configuration.....	107
management interfaces.....	107
loopback.....	106
management software process.....	32

manuals	
comments on.....	xx
maximum configuration weight	
J4300.....	24
J6300.....	24
memory <i>See</i> compact flash; DRAM modules; USB	
mgd process.....	32
microkernel.....	32
middle pane.....	67
midplane, J4300 and J6300.....	25
minimum configuration weight	
J4300.....	24
J6300.....	24
minor (yellow) alarms	
alternative boot device.....	166
primary compact flash.....	166
Routing Engine.....	166
modem commands	
at remote end.....	115
at router end.....	114
modem connection to router console port	
configuring modem at router end.....	113
configuring modem at user end.....	115
connecting modem to router.....	114
overview.....	113
monoammonium phosphate.....	83
mounting brackets	
J2300 rack installation.....	94
rack installation.....	95
wall installation (J2300 only).....	93
multiple routers	
safe rack order.....	94

## N

network cable pinouts.....	175
Network Time Protocol (NTP) server <i>See</i> NTP server	
notice icons.....	xvi
NT1 device, provisioning information.....	87
NTP server	
defining (configuration editor).....	120
defining (Quick Configuration).....	116
overview.....	105
requirement for Common Criteria environments.....	105

## O

ON button.....	16
ONLINE LEDs	
ADSL PIM status.....	57
channelized E1 ports.....	52
channelized T1 ports.....	52
G.SHDSL PIM status.....	59
ISDN BRI PIM status.....	56
openssl command.....	125

operating system *See* JUNOS Internet software  
operational mode

    commands.....69  
    prompt (>).....69

## P

Packet Forwarding Engine.....31  
    microkernel.....32  
packing materials  
    packing a Services Router for shipment.....171  
    packing components for shipment.....172  
    saving.....91  
pages, layout in J-Web.....65  
parentheses, in syntax descriptions.....xvii  
password *See* root password  
PC *See* management device  
personnel warning.....194  
Physical Interface Cards *See* PIMs  
Physical Interface Modules *See* PIMs  
PIC *See* PIMs  
PIM number, always 0.....147, 148  
PIMs (Physical Interface Modules)  
    4-Port ISDN BRI.....55  
    ADSL.....56  
    cables and connectors.....175  
    Dual-Port Channelized T1/E1 PIM.....51  
    Dual-Port E1.....49  
    Dual-Port Fast Ethernet.....54  
    Dual-Port Serial.....48  
    Dual-Port T1.....49  
    E3.....53  
    failure.....166  
    field-replaceable PIMs.....47  
    G.SHDSL.....58  
    installing.....146  
    installing cables.....148  
    J2300 fixed PIMs.....38  
    LEDs *See* LEDs  
    major (red) alarm.....166  
    midplane to Routing Engine.....25  
    non-hot-swappability.....35, 144, 146  
    overview.....35  
    PIM number, always 0.....147, 148, 167  
    removing.....144  
    replacing cables.....147  
    serial number label.....169  
    slot number, in command output (FPC).....147  
    T3.....53  
pinouts  
    ADSL RJ-11 connector.....189  
    chassis console DB-9 connector.....186  
    chassis console port.....185  
    EIA-530A DCE serial cable.....181  
    EIA-530A DTE serial cable.....180  
    Fast Ethernet connector.....185

    ISDN RJ-45 connector.....190  
    RJ-45 chassis console connector.....185  
    RJ-48 connector to DB-15 connector  
        (crossover).....188  
    RJ-48 connector to DB-15 connector  
        (straight).....188  
    RJ-48 connector to RJ-48 connector  
        (crossover).....187  
    RJ-48 connector to RJ-48 connector  
        (straight).....187  
    RS-232 DCE serial cable.....177  
    RS-232 DTE serial cable.....176  
    RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE serial cable.....178  
    RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE serial cable.....177  
    SHDSL RJ-11 connector.....189  
    V.35 DCE serial cable.....183  
    V.35 DTE serial cable.....182  
    X.21 DCE serial cable.....184  
    X.21 DTE serial cable.....183  
plug types, AC.....86  
ports  
    0.....107  
    ADSL *See* ADSL ports  
    cables, PIM, installing.....148  
    cables, WAN, removing.....147  
    channelized *See* channelized E1 ports; channelized  
        T1 ports  
    console.....17, 27  
        *See also* console port  
    console (chassis).....17, 27  
        *See also* console port  
    DS1 *See* E1 ports; T1 ports  
    DS3 *See* E3 ports; T3 ports  
    E1 *See* E1 ports  
    E3 *See* E3 ports  
    Fast Ethernet.....18, 28  
        *See also* Fast Ethernet ports  
    G.SHDSL *See* SHDSL ports  
    interface naming.....147, 148  
    ISDN *See* ISDN BRI ports  
    J2300 LAN.....18  
    J2300 types supported.....38  
    J2300 USB.....18  
    J4300 LAN.....28  
    J4300 types supported.....47  
    J4300 USB.....27  
    J6300 LAN.....28  
    J6300 types supported.....47  
    J6300 USB.....27  
    lo0.0.....106  
    serial *See* serial ports  
    SHDSL *See* SHDSL ports  
    T1 *See* T1 ports  
    T3 *See* T3 ports

power.....	16
applying.....	102
button.....	16
connecting.....	96
grounding requirement.....	96
LED states.....	16
power cables <i>See</i> DC power cables	
power cords <i>See</i> AC power cords	
removing.....	102
requirements.....	84
<i>See also</i> AC power; DC power; power supplies;	
power system	
power button.....	16
power cables <i>See</i> DC power cables	
power cords <i>See</i> AC power cords	
POWER LED states.....	16
power supplies, J6300	
blank panel required in empty slot.....	158
dedicated AC power feed requirement.....	160
dedicated DC power feed requirement.....	164
description.....	29
installing AC.....	160
installing DC.....	163
LED states.....	29
redundancy.....	29
removing AC.....	159
removing DC.....	162
serial number label.....	169
power system.....	19
connecting.....	97, 98
fan.....	30
J2300.....	19
J4300.....	29
J6300.....	29
<i>See also</i> AC power; DC power	
preparing for installation.....	79
processes, software	
chassis process.....	32
forwarding process.....	32
interface process.....	32
management process.....	32
routing protocol process.....	32
product disposal.....	225
product overview.....	3
prompt <i>See</i> command prompts; restart-after-upgrade	
prompt	
provisioning an ISDN line.....	87

## Q

Quick Configuration	
basic settings.....	115
capabilities.....	62
initial configuration.....	115
Secure Access page.....	126

secure Web access.....	125
Set Up page.....	65

## R

rack ears <i>See</i> mounting brackets	
rack installation	
general requirements.....	80
J2300.....	93
J2300 mounting brackets.....	94
lifting guidelines.....	210
mounting brackets.....	95
order of multiple routers.....	94
procedure.....	94
safety guidelines and warnings.....	211
securing rack to building.....	81
size requirements.....	80
support for front-mount rack.....	81
ventilation requirement.....	81
radio frequency interference (RFI), reducing.....	84
ramp angle requirement.....	215
read or write error, Routing Engine.....	166
red alarms <i>See</i> major alarms	
red asterisk (*).....	67
redundant J6300 power supplies	
description.....	29
safety guidelines for power sources.....	199
regulatory compliance.....	191
release notes, URL.....	xv
remote connection to router console port	
configuring modem at router end.....	113
configuring modem at user end.....	115
connecting modem to router.....	114
overview.....	113
removable compact flash <i>See</i> compact flash	
replacement	
AC power cord.....	158
console port cable (chassis).....	144
DC power cable.....	161
DRAM modules.....	154
PIM cables.....	147
PIMs.....	144
power system (J6300).....	158
primary compact flash.....	148
removable compact flash.....	150
tools and parts required.....	143
USB storage device.....	153
request chassis pic fpc-slot command.....	147
request system license add command.....	136
request system license add terminal command.....	136
request system license delete command.....	136
request system license save command.....	136
required entry (J-Web).....	67
rescue configuration, CONFIG button on front	
panel.....	17

reset button  
     for restart *See* power button  
     for return to factory configuration *See* CONFIG button  
 resetting to factory configuration, with the CONFIG button.....17  
 restart-after-upgrade prompt.....75  
 Return Materials Authorization *See* RMA  
 returning hardware.....167  
     packing a Services Router for shipment.....171  
     packing components for shipment.....172  
     procedure.....170  
     tools and parts required.....171  
 RJ-45 connector pinouts  
     chassis console port.....185  
     Fast Ethernet port.....185  
 RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter  
     chassis console port.....111, 114  
 RJ-48 connector to DB-15 connector (crossover)  
     pinouts.....188  
 RJ-48 connector to DB-15 connector (straight)  
     pinouts.....188  
 RJ-48 connector to RJ-48 connector (crossover)  
     pinouts.....187  
 RJ-48 connector to RJ-48 connector (straight)  
     pinouts.....187  
 RMA (Return Materials Authorization).....167  
     number.....170  
     packing a Services Router for shipment.....171  
     packing components for shipment.....172  
     procedure.....170  
     tools and parts required.....171  
 root password  
     at initial local connection (none).....112  
     at initial remote connection (none).....115  
     characteristics.....105  
     Common Criteria limitations.....105  
     defining (configuration editor).....119  
     defining (Quick Configuration).....116  
     required to commit a configuration.....105  
 route reflectors, BGP, license.....132  
 router *See* Services Router  
 Routing Engine  
     fan.....30  
     fan failure.....166  
     J2300 functions and components.....14  
     J4300 functions and components.....25  
     J6300 functions and components.....25  
     kernel.....31  
     major (red) alarm.....166  
     midplane to PIMs.....25  
     minor (yellow) alarm.....166  
     read or write error.....166  
     software component.....31  
     too warm.....166  
 routing protocol software process.....32

rpd process.....32  
 RS-232 DCE cable pinouts.....177  
 RS-232 DTE cable pinouts.....176  
 RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE cable pinouts.....178  
 RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE cable pinouts.....177  
 rubber feet.....92

## S

S/T port *See* ISDN BRI ports  
 safety guidelines and warnings  
     AC power.....197  
     battery handling.....220  
     DC power (general).....198  
     DC power disconnection.....199  
     DC power wiring sequence warning.....201  
     DC power wiring terminations warning.....203  
     DC power, grounding requirements and warning.....201  
     DC power, redundant power supplies.....199  
     electrical.....196  
     general.....193  
     grounded equipment.....204  
     in case of electrical accident.....205  
     installation.....210  
     jewelry removal.....221  
     lasers and LEDs.....215  
     levels.....191  
     lightening activity.....222  
     maintenance and operation.....219  
     multiple power supplies .....206  
     operating temperature.....223  
     power disconnection.....207  
     product disposal.....225  
     rack-mounting.....211  
     ramps.....215  
     read installation instructions.....210  
     telecommunications cord.....209  
     TN power system.....208  
 safety standards.....226  
     fire safety.....82  
 sample configuration  
     for basic connectivity.....121  
     for secure access.....130  
     for SSL certificates.....129  
 saving licenses (CLI).....136  
 screen length, CLI, setting .....76  
 screen width, CLI, setting .....76  
 screw and anchor capacity, for wall installation.....92  
 secure access  
     CLI configuration editor.....128  
     generating SSL certificates.....125  
     HTTPS access (configuration editor).....128  
     HTTPS access (Quick Configuration).....125  
     HTTPS recommended.....124

installing SSL certificates (configuration editor).....	128
installing SSL certificates (Quick Configuration).....	125
J-Web configuration editor.....	128
JUNOScript SSL access.....	125
overview.....	124
requirements.....	124
sample configuration.....	130
verifying secure access configuration.....	129
Secure Access page	
description.....	126
field summary.....	127
Secure Sockets Layer <i>See</i> SSL	
serial number	
chassis components, label.....	167
PIMs.....	169
power supply.....	169
serial ports	
cables and connectors.....	175
Dual-Port Serial PIM.....	48
EIA-530A DCE pinouts.....	181
EIA-530A DTE pinouts.....	180
J2300.....	39
J2300 (with ISDN BRI S/T port).....	40
J2300 (with ISDN BRI U port).....	40
LED states.....	40, 41, 49
RS-232 DCE pinouts.....	177
RS-232 DTE pinouts.....	176
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE pinouts.....	178
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE pinouts.....	177
V.35 DCE pinouts.....	183
V.35 DTE pinouts.....	182
X.21 DCE pinouts.....	184
X.21 DTE pinouts.....	183
service provider, contacting for ISDN provisioning.....	87
Services Router	
backup.....	106
blue status LED.....	15
clearance.....	79
connecting.....	109
dimensions.....	80
establishing secure Web access.....	123
establishing software connectivity.....	103
grounding a DC-powered model.....	98
grounding an AC-powered model.....	97
hardware.....	11
hardware replacement.....	143
hardware return.....	167
HTTPS Web access.....	123
installation and connection.....	89
licenses.....	131
network cables and connectors.....	175
operating environment.....	81
overview.....	3, 5
packing for shipment.....	171
PIM overview.....	35
powering on and off.....	102
preparation checklist.....	88
safety and compliance.....	191
site preparation.....	79
software.....	31
SSL access.....	123
unpacking.....	90
user interfaces <i>See</i> user interfaces	
sessions, J-Web.....	67
set cli commands.....	75
Set Up page.....	65
field summary.....	116
setup	
configuration editor.....	118
Quick Configuration.....	115
requirements.....	108
SHDSL ports	
description.....	58
J2300.....	44
J2300 (with ISDN BRI S/T port).....	45
LED states.....	45
LED states on a G.SHDSL chassis.....	46
LED states on a G.SHDSL PIM.....	59
RJ-11 connector pinouts.....	189
shipping carton	
packing a Services Router for shipment.....	171
packing components for shipment.....	172
saving.....	91
show chassis alarms command.....	165
show chassis fpc pic-status command.....	147, 148
show chassis hardware command	
locating component serial numbers.....	167
show cli command.....	74
show system license command.....	137
explanation.....	137
show system license keys command.....	138
show system license usage command.....	138
explanation.....	138
show system storage command.....	153
shutdown	
graceful.....	16, 102
immediate.....	17, 102
side pane.....	67
signaling limitations.....	84
site preparation	
checklist.....	88
electrical wiring guidelines.....	83
fire safety.....	82
for desktop and wall installation.....	80
for rack installation.....	80
guidelines.....	79
operating environment.....	81
power requirements.....	84

size  
  J2300.....13  
  J4300.....24  
  J6300.....24  
  requirements for rack installation.....80

slot numbers, PIM  
  displayed as FPC number in command  
  output.....147, 148

software.....31  
  features.....31  
  licenses *See* licenses  
  *See also* JUNOS Internet software

specifications  
  AC electrical connection.....85  
  AC power cords.....85  
  DC electrical connection.....86  
  DC power cables.....86  
  electrical.....84  
  environmental.....81  
  grounding cable.....96  
  grounding lug.....96  
  J2300 hardware.....13  
  J4300 hardware.....24  
  J6300 hardware.....24  
  serial PIM cables and connectors.....175

SRC application.....33

SSH  
  defining (configuration editor).....119  
  defining access (Quick Configuration).....117  
  management access.....108

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)  
  enabling secure access (Quick  
  Configuration).....125  
  management access.....124  
  verifying SSL configuration.....129

SSL 3.0 option, disabling on Internet Explorer for  
  worldwide version of JUNOS software.....64

SSL certificates  
  adding (configuration editor).....129  
  adding (Quick Configuration).....127  
  generating.....125  
  sample configuration.....129  
  verifying SSL configuration.....129

standards compliance.....226

starting JUNOS CLI.....69

startup  
  J-Web interface.....64  
  JUNOS CLI.....69  
  Services Router.....102

statements, configuration types.....71

status.....16  
  license key.....134  
  *See also* LEDs

STATUS LEDs  
  ADSL ports.....57  
  channelized E1 ports.....52

channelized T1 ports.....52

E1 ports.....42, 44, 50

E3 ports.....54

ISDN BRI ports.....41, 44, 46

ISDN ports.....56

serial ports.....40, 41, 49

SHDSL ports.....45, 46, 59

T1 ports.....42, 44, 50

T3 ports.....54

storage media  
  replacing the primary compact flash.....148  
  replacing the removable compact flash.....150  
  replacing the USB storage device.....153

support, technical *See* technical support

symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line *See* SHDSL

syntax conventions.....xvi

system overview  
  hardware.....11  
  software.....31

system time  
  defining (Quick Configuration).....117  
  overview.....105  
  synchronizing (configuration editor).....120  
  synchronizing (Quick Configuration).....116

## T

T1 ports  
  description.....49  
  *See also* channelized T1 ports

J2300.....41

J2300 (with ISDN BRI U port).....43

LED states.....42, 44, 50

RJ-48 cable pinouts.....186

T3 ports  
  BNC connector pinouts.....189  
  description.....53  
  LED states.....54

Taiwan, compliance statement.....232

task bar.....67

technical support  
  contacting JTAC.....xx  
  contacting JTAC for hardware return.....169  
  information required for hardware return.....170

telecommunications line wire gauge.....209

Telnet  
  defining access (Quick Configuration).....117  
  management access.....107

temperature  
  required for operation.....81  
  Routing Engine, too warm.....166  
  warning.....223

terminal type, setting .....76

terminology	
basic connectivity	103
PIMs	35
secure Web access	123
thermal output	82
time <i>See</i> system time	
time zone	105
defining (configuration editor)	119
defining (Quick Configuration)	116
TN power system	208
tolerances, environmental	81
tools and equipment	
for component replacement	143
for hardware return	171
for installation	90
top pane	66
traffic analysis license	132
troubleshooting a Services Router, hardware	
components	165
<i>See also</i> LEDs	
turning on a Services Router	102
Type C fire extinguishers	83
types of configuration statements	71

## U

U port <i>See</i> ISDN BRI ports	
United States, compliance statements	232
universal serial bus <i>See</i> USB	
unpacking the router	90
URLs	
datasheets	35
PIM information and datasheets	35
release notes	xv
return and repair policies	170
support	166
USB (universal serial bus)	
J2300 USB port	18
J4300 USB port	27
J6300 USB port	27
storage device, installing	154
storage device, removing	153
storage device, replacing	153
user interfaces	
feature comparison	62
J-Web graphical user interface (GUI)	33
<i>See also</i> J-Web interface	
JUNOS command-line interface (CLI)	33
<i>See also</i> JUNOS CLI	
JUNOScope application	33
overview	61
preparation	64
SRC application	33

## V

V.35 DCE cable pinouts	183
V.35 DTE cable pinouts	182
ventilation requirement	79
verification	
active licenses	137
basic connectivity	121
license usage	138
licenses	137
secure access	129
version, license key	134

## W

wall installation (J2300 only)	92
mounting brackets	93
mounting requirement	80
screw and anchor capacity	92
warnings	
battery handling	220
DC power cables	198
DC power disconnection	199
DC power plant and chassis ground	87
DC wiring sequence	201
DC wiring terminations	203
DC-powered J2300 routers, trained personnel	
access only	91
DC-powered J4300 and J6300 routers, restricted	
access installation only	83
earthed mains socket (Norway and Sweden only)	205
electrical	196
ESD strap to prevent router damage	12, 21
general	193
grounded equipment	204
installation	210
jewelry removal	221
laser and LED	215
levels defined	191
lightening activity	222
maintenance and operational	219
multiple power supply disconnection	206
operating temperature	223
personnel	194
power disconnection	207
product disposal	225
rack-mounting requirements	211
ramp angle	215
read installation instructions	210
restricted access location for DC-powered	
routers	30, 94
safe rack order for multiple routers	94
telecommunications lines	209
TN power system	208
Web access, secure <i>See</i> secure access	



Web browser, modifying Internet Explorer for worldwide version of JUNOS software.....	64
weight	
J2300.....	14
J2300 two-person installation recommendation.....	93
J4300.....	24
J6300.....	24
rack-mount requirements.....	80
two-person installation recommendation.....	94
windows, J-Web, unpredictable results with multiple.....	67
wire gauge	
for grounding cable.....	96
for grounding cables.....	96
for telecommunications lines.....	209
wiring guidelines	
DC wiring sequence warning.....	201
DC wiring terminations warning.....	203
radio frequency interference (RFI).....	84
signaling limitations.....	84
suppressing electromagnetic interference (EMI).....	84
working directory, setting.....	75

## X

X.21 DCE cable pinouts.....	184
X.21 DTE cable pinouts.....	183

